

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>C07K 5/06</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/37667</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 29 July 1999 (29.07.99)									
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US99/01422 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 22 January 1999 (22.01.99)  <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> <table border="0"><tr><td>09/012,363</td><td>23 January 1998 (23.01.98)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>09/020,001</td><td>4 February 1998 (04.02.98)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>09/089,734</td><td>3 June 1998 (03.06.98)</td><td>US</td></tr></table> <b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> MICROCID PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 850 Maude Avenue, Mountain View, CA 94043 (US).  <b>(72) Inventors; and</b> <b>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):</b> CHAMBERLAND, Suzanne [US/US]; 18400 Overlook Road #6, Los Gatos, CA 95030 (US). LEE, May [US/US]; 1335 Carvo Court, Los Altos, CA 94024 (US). LEE, Ving, J. [US/US]; 1335 Carvo Court, Los Altos, CA 94024 (US). LEGER, Roger [CA/CA]; 316 Escuela Avenue #101, Mountain View, CA 94040 (US). RENAULT, Thomas [US/US]; 900 Pepper Tree Lane #224, Santa Clara, CA 95051 (US). SHE, Miles [US/US]; 3952 Angelo Avenue, Oakland, CA 94619 (US). ZHANG, Zhijia, J. [CN/CN]; 770 Crane Avenue, Foster City, CA 94404 (US).		09/012,363	23 January 1998 (23.01.98)	US	09/020,001	4 February 1998 (04.02.98)	US	09/089,734	3 June 1998 (03.06.98)	US	<b>(74) Agents:</b> WARBURG, Richard, J. et al.; Lyon & Lyon LLP, Suite 4700, 633 West Fifth Street, Los Angeles, CA 90071-2066 (US).  <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
09/012,363	23 January 1998 (23.01.98)	US									
09/020,001	4 February 1998 (04.02.98)	US									
09/089,734	3 June 1998 (03.06.98)	US									
<b>(54) Title:</b> EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS  <b>(57) Abstract</b>  Compounds are described which have efflux pump inhibitor activity. Also described are methods of using such efflux pump inhibitor compounds and pharmaceutical compositions which include such compounds.											

206

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

DESCRIPTION

## EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS

5

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to the field of antimicrobial agents and to methods for identification and characterization of potential antimicrobial agents. More particularly, this invention relates to antimicrobial agents for which the mode of action involves cellular efflux pumps and the regulation of efflux pumps.

10

BACKGROUND

The following background material is not admitted to be prior art to the pending claims, but is provided only to aid the understanding of the reader.

Antibiotics have been effective tools in the treatment of infectious diseases during the last half century. From the development of antibiotic therapy to the late 1980s there was almost complete control over bacterial infections in developed countries. The emergence of resistant bacteria, especially during the late 1980s and early 1990s, is changing this situation. The increase in antibiotic resistant strains has been particularly common in major hospitals and care centers. The consequences of the increase in resistant strains include higher morbidity and mortality, longer patient hospitalization, and an increase in treatment costs. (B. Murray, 1994, *New Engl. J. Med.* 330: 1229-1230.)

The constant use of antibiotics in the hospital environment has selected bacterial populations that are resistant to many antibiotics. These populations include opportunistic pathogens that may not be strongly virulent but that are intrinsically resistant to a number of antibiotics. Such bacteria often infect debilitated or immunocompromised patients. The emerging resistant populations also include strains of bacterial species that are well known pathogens, which previously were susceptible to antibiotics. The newly acquired resistance is generally due to DNA mutations, or to resistance plasmids (R plasmids) or resistance-conferring transposons transferred from another organism. Infections by either type of bacterial population, naturally resistant opportunistic pathogens or antibiotic-resistant pathogenic bacteria, are difficult to treat

with current antibiotics. New antibiotic molecules which can override the mechanisms of resistance are needed.

Bacteria have developed several different mechanisms to overcome the action of antibiotics. These mechanisms of resistance can be specific for a molecule or a family of antibiotics, or can be non-specific and be involved in resistance to unrelated antibiotics. Several mechanisms of resistance can exist in a single bacterial strain, and those mechanisms may act independently or they may act synergistically to overcome the action of an antibiotic or a combination of antibiotics. Specific mechanisms include degradation of the drug, inactivation of the drug by enzymatic modification, and alteration of the drug target (B.G. Spratt, *Science* 264:388 (1994)). There are, however, more general mechanisms of drug resistance, in which access of the antibiotic to the target is prevented or reduced by decreasing the transport of the antibiotic into the cell or by increasing the efflux of the drug from the cell to the outside medium. Both mechanisms can lower the concentration of drug at the target site and allow bacterial survival in the presence of one or more antibiotics which would otherwise inhibit or kill the bacterial cells. Some bacteria utilize both mechanisms, combining a low permeability of the cell wall (including membranes) with an active efflux of antibiotics. (H. Nikaido, *Science* 264:382-388 (1994)).

In some cases, antibiotic resistance due to low permeability is related to the structure of the bacterial membranes. In general, bacteria can be divided into two major groups based on the structure of the membranes surrounding the cytoplasm. Gram-positive (G+) bacteria have one membrane, a cytoplasmic membrane. In contrast, Gram-negative (G-) bacteria have two membranes, a cytoplasmic membrane and an outer membrane. These bacterial membranes are lipid bilayers which contain proteins and may be associated with other molecules. The permeability of bacterial membranes affects susceptibility/resistance to antibiotics because, while there are a few molecular targets of antibiotics, *e.g.*, penicillin-binding proteins, that are accessible from the outer leaflet of the cytoplasmic membranes, the principal targets for antibiotics are in the cytoplasm or in the inner leaflet of the cytoplasmic membrane. Therefore for an antibiotic which has a target in the cytoplasmic membrane, in Gram-negative bacteria that antibiotic will first need to cross the outer membrane. For a target in the cytoplasm, an antibiotic will need to cross the cytoplasmic membrane in Gram-positive bacteria,



and both the outer and cytoplasmic membranes in Gram-negative bacteria. For both membranes, an antibiotic may diffuse through the membrane, or may cross using a membrane transport system.

For Gram-negative bacteria, the lipid composition of the outer membrane  
5 constitutes a significant permeability barrier. The outer layer of this outer membrane contains a lipid, lipopolysaccharide (LPS), which is only found in the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria. The lipid layer of the outer membrane is highly organized in a quasi-crystalline fashion and has a very low fluidity. Because of the low fluidity of the lipid layer of the outer membrane, even lipophilic antibiotics will not diffuse  
10 rapidly through the lipid layer. This has been shown experimentally, hydrophobic probe molecules have been shown to partition poorly into the hydrophobic portion of LPS and to permeate across the outer membrane bilayer at about one-fiftieth to one-hundredth the rate through the usual phospholipid bilayers (like the cytoplasmic membrane bilayer).

15 Some antibiotics may permeate through water-filled porin channels or through specific transport systems. Many of the porin channels, however, provide only narrow diameter channels which do not allow efficient diffusion of the larger antibiotic molecules. In addition, many porin channels are highly hydrophilic environments, and so do not efficiently allow the passage of hydrophobic molecules. Thus, the outer  
20 membrane acts as a molecular sieve for small molecules. This explains, in part, why Gram-negative bacteria are generally less susceptible to antibiotics than Gram-positive bacteria, and why Gram-negative bacteria are generally more resistant to large antibiotics, such as glycopeptides, that cannot cross the outer membrane.

The cytoplasmic membrane also provides a diffusion barrier for some  
25 antibiotics. However, since the fluidity of the lipid layer of the cytoplasmic membrane is higher than that of the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria, drugs that show some lipophilicity will be able to permeate through the lipid layer. Other drugs, such as phosphonomycin or D-cycloserine that have very low solubility in a lipophilic environment will cross the cytoplasmic membrane by using a transport system. In this  
30 case, though, if the transport system is not synthesized, the bacteria will become resistant to the drug (Peitz et al., 1967, *Biochem. J.* 6: 2561).

Decreasing the permeability of the outer membrane, by reducing either the

number of porins or by reducing the number of a certain porin species, can decrease the susceptibility of a strain to a wide range of antibiotics due to the decreased rate of entry of the antibiotics into the cells. However, for most antibiotics, the half-equilibration times are sufficiently short that the antibiotic could exert its effect unless another  
5 mechanism is present. Efflux pumps are an example of such other mechanism. Once in the cytoplasm or periplasm a drug can be transported back to the outer medium. This transport is mediated by efflux pumps, which are constituted of proteins. Different pumps can efflux specifically a drug or group of drugs, such as the NorA system that transports quinolones, or Tet A that transports tetracyclines, or they can efflux a large  
10 variety of molecules, such as certain efflux pumps of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. In general, efflux pumps have a cytoplasmic component and energy is required to transport molecules out of the cell. Some efflux pumps have a second cytoplasmic membrane protein that extends into the periplasm. At least some efflux pumps of *P. aeruginosa* have a third protein located in the outer membrane.

15 Efflux pumps are involved in antibiotic resistance since, in some cases, they can remove a significant fraction of the antibiotic molecules which manage to enter the cells, thereby maintaining a very low intracellular antibiotic concentration. To illustrate, *P. aeruginosa* laboratory-derived mutant strain 799/61, which does not produce any measurable amounts of efflux pump is 8 to 10 fold more susceptible to  
20 tetracycline and ciprofloxacin than the parent strain *P. aeruginosa* 799, which synthesizes efflux pumps. Also, null mutants of *mexA*, the cytoplasmic component of a *P. aeruginosa* efflux pump, are more susceptible to antibiotics than the wild type.

The physiological role of efflux pumps has not been clearly defined yet. They are involved in drug resistance but they also are involved in the normal physiology of  
25 the bacterial cell. The efflux pump coded in the *mexA* operon of *P. aeruginosa* has been shown to be regulated by the iron content of the medium, and it is co-regulated with the synthesis of the receptors of siderophores. Siderophores are molecules that are needed for bacterial growth under iron starvation conditions, such as during infection of an animal. They are synthesized in the cytoplasm and exported when the bacterial cell  
30 needs iron. Siderophores scavenge iron within the infected animal and return the iron to the microbe to be used for essential microbial processes. Since there is essentially no free iron in the bodies of animals, including the human body, the production of

siderophores by infecting bacteria is an important virulence factor for the progress of the infection.

Even organisms normally surrounded by a cell envelope of relatively high permeability can develop resistance by decreasing the permeability of the envelope.

5 When an agent mainly diffuses across the barrier through a specific channel, mutational loss of the channel can be an efficient mechanism for resistance. A "nonclassical"  $\beta$ -lactam compound, imipenem, shows an exceptional activity against *P. aeruginosa*, mainly because this agent diffuses through a specific channel, OprD, whose physiological function appears to be that of the transport of basic amino acids.

10 However, *P. aeruginosa* could become resistant to imipenem by simply losing the oprD channel, and currently a large fraction of *P. aeruginosa* strains isolated from the hospital environment are resistant as a result of this modification. In a similar manner,  $\beta$ -lactam compounds designed to mimic iron-chelating compounds (siderophores) during their transport through the outer membranes are known to select mutants that are  
15 defective in the specific transport of these siderophores.

In summary, the above discussion indicates that cellular factors affecting transport (both active and passive transport) of antibiotics into bacterial cells are important components of antibiotic resistance for many bacterial species.

20

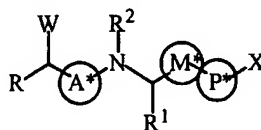
### SUMMARY

This invention concerns particular compounds which are efflux pump inhibitors, and which are therefore compounds which inhibit cellular efflux pumps of bacteria or other microbes. Such efflux pumps export substrate molecules from the cytoplasm in an energy-dependent manner, and the exported substrate molecules can include  
25 antibacterial agents or other antimicrobial agents. Such efflux pump inhibitors are useful, for example, for treating microbial infections by reducing the export of a co-administered antimicrobial agent or by preventing the export of a compound synthesized by microbes (e.g., bacteria) to allow or improve their growth. An example of reducing the export of such a compound is inhibiting iron availability for the microbe  
30 by reducing the export of siderophores. Thus, this invention also provides compositions which include such efflux pump inhibitors and methods for treating microbial infections using those compositions.

The identification and use of efflux pump inhibitors is described in United States patent applications, Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS, Appl. No. 08/427,088, filed April 21, 1995, Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS, Appl. No. 08/898,477, filed July 22, 1997, and International Patent Application PCT/US96/05469, Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS, which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties including drawings. Screening methods described therein were used to identify some of the efflux inhibitor compounds of the present invention, and additional compounds were synthesized and tested which were structurally related to the active compounds identified through screening.

Efflux pump inhibitor compounds of the present invention can be described generically as shown below for Structure I, namely:

Structure I



where

$M^* = (CH_2)_n$  ( $n = 0-2$ )

$P^* = \text{carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO}_2, -CH_2-, -CH(OH)-$  (*R*- or *S*-)configuration,  $SO_2$  ( $t = 0-2$ )

$A^* = \text{carbonyl (C=O), } -CH(OH)CH_2$  (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

20

$R = H$ , alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0-5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted

30 amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxy},

2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10})$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ], substituted arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10})$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )],

5 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )],

10 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )],

15 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )],

20 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{NHC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{SC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{C}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{N}=\text{CNR}^b\text{R}^c$  ( $n = 1\text{-}4$ );  $\text{R}^a$  ( $\text{R}^b$  or  $\text{R}^c$ ) = H, alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively  $\text{R}^a+\text{R}^b$  (or  $\text{R}^b+\text{R}^c$ ) =  $(\text{CH}_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ .

$\text{R}^1 = \text{H}$ , alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $\text{C}_3\text{-C}_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl  $[(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{COOH}$ ;  $n = 0\text{-}5$ ], hydroxyalkyl  $[(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{OH}$ ;  $n = 1\text{-}4$ ],

25 aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxyl},

30 disubstituted aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ) {any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-

- (or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10})$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10})$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )],
- 5 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{NHC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{SC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{C}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{N}=\text{CNR}^b\text{R}^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ );  $\text{R}^a$  ( $\text{R}^b$  or  $\text{R}^c$ ) = H, alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively  $\text{R}^a+\text{R}^b$  (or  $\text{R}^b+\text{R}^c$ ) =  $(\text{CH}_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ .
- 10  
15  
20

- $\text{R}^2 = \text{H}$ , alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $\text{C}_3\text{-C}_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl ( $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ ) {any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl
- 25  
30

[optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolyl, substituted indolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1 - 4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted-amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4]

= 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

W = (alpha-aminoacyl)amido (such as glycylamido, D-alanyl amido, D-aspartylamido, D-glutamylamido, D-leucylamido, D-phenylalanyl amido, D-phenylglycylamido, D-tyrosylamido), aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles [such as N-morpholinyl, N-piperazinyl, N-pyrrolidinyl, N-imidazolyl, N-pyrrolyl, N-pyrazolyl, N-triazolyl, or N-tetrazolyl], substituted azaheterocycles [e.g., 2-(or 3-) alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-(3- or 4-) alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)piperazinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolidinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolyl], hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>).

X = aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl [optionally substituted with H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub>), aryloxy, arylthio, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, aryloxy carbonyl, arylalkoxycarbonyl, carboxamido, naphthyl-aminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position), substituted naphthylaminocarbonyl, quinolinyaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), substituted



- quinoliny-aminocarbonyl, naphthylalkylaminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position),  
quinolinyalkylaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), thienoaminocarbonyl, furylamino-  
carbonyl, or pyridylaminocarbonyl], oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted oxazolyl  
[optionally substituted with H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub>),  
5 aryloxy, arylthio, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, aryloxy, aryloxy, arylalkoxycarbonyl,  
carboxamido, naphthyl-aminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position), substituted  
naphthylaminocarbonyl, quinoliny-aminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), substituted  
quinolinyaminocarbonyl, naphthylalkylamino-carbonyl (1- or 2-position),  
quinolinyalkylaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), thienoamino-carbonyl, furylamino-  
10 carbonyl, or pyridylaminocarbonyl], thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl  
[optionally substituted with H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub>),  
aryloxy, arylthio, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, aryloxy, aryloxy, arylalkoxycarbonyl,  
carboxamido, naphthyl-aminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position), substituted  
naphthylaminocarbonyl, quinolinyaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), substituted  
15 quinolinyaminocarbonyl, naphthylalkylaminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position),  
quinolinyalkylaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), thienoaminocarbonyl, furylamino-  
carbonyl, or pyridylaminocarbonyl], tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny,  
substituted quinoliny [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),  
alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], isoquinoliny,  
20 substituted isoquinoliny [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),  
alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], quinoxaliny,  
substituted quinoxaliny [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),  
alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazoliny, substituted quinazoliny [optionally substituted with  
alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolyl, substituted  
25 benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio  
(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>11</sub>), thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, aryloxy,  
arylthio, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl  
[optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino,  
aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>11</sub>), thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, aryloxy, arylthio, halogen  
30 (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with  
alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), arylalkyl (C<sub>7</sub>-  
C<sub>11</sub>), thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, aryloxy, arylthio, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], substituted

- arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}); n = 1-4]$  {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},
- 5 substituted thienylalkyl  $[\text{thienyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},
- 10 substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},
- 15 substituted pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], or hydroxy},
- 20 quinolinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinolinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], isoquinolinyllalkyl  $[\text{isoquinolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted isoquinolinyll  $[\text{isoquinolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], quinoxalinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinoxalinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinoxalinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinoxalinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], quinazolinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinazolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinazolinyllalkyl  $[\text{quinazolinyll}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$  [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ )], benzimidazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzimidazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ ; optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)],
- 30 benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ ; optionally substituted with alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkoxy ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), alkylthio ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ ), benzoxazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ ,

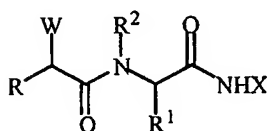
substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)].

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either  
 5 (R)- or (S)- configuration and any combination of configurations.

In preferred embodiments, the efflux inhibitor compounds of this invention have a chemical structure described by the sub-generic Type A structure as described below, namely:

10

### Generics for Type-A Structures



*Type-A Structures*

When

A\* = carbonyl (C=O); M\* = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> (n = 0);

P\* = CONH

R = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl  
 15 (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl},  
 disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),  
 20 alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4],  
 substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with  
 25 alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)],  
 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally

substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>a</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

R<sup>1</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1 - 4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally

substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

R<sup>2</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolyl, substituted indolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-

- C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4],
- 5 substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1 - 4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally
- 10 substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally
- 15 substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothienylalkyl
- 25 [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)],
- 30 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

W = (alpha-aminoacyl)amido (such as glycylamido, D-alanyl amido, D-aspartylamido, D-glutamylamido, D-leucylamido, D-phenylalanyl amido, D-phenylglycylamido, or D-tyrosyl-amido), aminoalkyl  $[(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c; n = 1-4; R^b$   
 5 and/or  $R^c = H$ , alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles [such as N-morpholinyl, N-piperazinyl, N-pyrrolidinyl, N-imidazolyl, N-pyrrolyl, N-pyrazolyl, N-triazolyl, or N-tetrazolyl], substituted azaheterocycles [*e.g.*, 2-(or 3-) alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-  
 10 (3- or 4-) alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)piperazinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolidinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolyl], hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>).

X = aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino,  
 15 monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino  
 20 [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinolinyl, substituted quinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], isoquinolinyl,  
 25 substituted isoquinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], quinoxalinyl, substituted quinoxalinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyl, substituted quinazolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolyl, substituted  
 30 benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)],

benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy], quinolinyllalkyl [quinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinolinyllalkyl [quinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], isoquinolinyllalkyl [isoquinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinolinyll [isoquinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], quinoxalinyllalkyl [quinoxalinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyllalkyl [quinoxalinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyllalkyl [quinazolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinazolinyllalkyl [quinazolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted

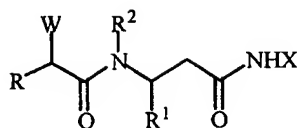


benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)].

5

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (*R*)- or (*S*)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

## Generics for Type-B Structures



*Type-B Structures*

When

A\* = carbonyl (C=O); M\* = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> (n = 1);

P\* = CONH

- R = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl},
- disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4],
- substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F

or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

R<sup>1</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4],  
 10 aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),  
 15 alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1 - 4] {optionally substituted with  
 20 alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F  
 25 or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F  
 30

or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

R<sup>2</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolyl, substituted indolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1 - 4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally

- substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally
- 5 substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally
- 10 substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)],
- 15 benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)],
- 20 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.
- 25 W = (alpha-aminoacyl)amido (such as glycylamido, D-alanyl amido, D-aspartylamido, D-glutamylamido, D-leucylamido, D-phenylalanyl amido, D-phenylglycylamido, or D-tyrosyl-amido), aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any
- 30 combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles [such as N-morpholinyl, N-piperazinyl, N-pyrrolidinyl, N-imidazolyl, N-pyrrolyl, N-pyrazolyl, N-triazolyl, or N-tetrazolyl], substituted azaheterocycles [e.g., 2-(or 3-) alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-

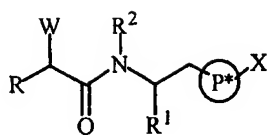
(3- or 4-) alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)piperazinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolidinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolyl], hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>).

- 5 X = aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),
- 10 alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinolinyl, substituted quinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),
- 15 alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], isoquinolinyl, substituted isoquinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyl, substituted quinazolinyl [optionally substituted with
- 20 alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),
- 25 alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)],
- 30 or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-

C<sub>4</sub>), disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy}, quinolinyalkyl [quinolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinolinyalkyl [quinolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], isoquinolinyalkyl [isoquinolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinolinyalkyl [isoquinolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxalinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxalinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyalkyl [quinazolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinazolinyalkyl [quinazolinyalkyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)].

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (R)- or (S)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

## Generics for Type-C Structures



## When

$A^* = \text{carbonyl (C=O)}; M^* = (\text{CH}_2)_n \text{ (n = 1)};$

$$P^* = \text{NH, O, SO, (t = 0 - 2)}$$

### Type-C Structures

R = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>) {any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}



$C_4$ ], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), or hydroxy},  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ );  $R^a$  ( $R^b$  or  $R^c$ ) = H, alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively  $R^a+R^b$  (or  $R^b+R^c$ ) =  $(CH_2)_{2-3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ .

$R^1$  = H, alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3$ - $C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0-5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], aryl ( $C_6$ - $C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6$ - $C_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl ( $C_6$ - $C_{10}$ ) {any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6$ - $C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6$ - $C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1$ - $C_4$ )], or hydroxy}.

$C_4$ ), disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), or hydroxy},  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ );  $R^a$  ( $R^b$  or  $R^c$ ) = H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively  $R^a+R^b$  (or  $R^b+R^c$ ) =  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ .

$R^2$  = H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), or hydroxyl}, disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolyl, substituted indolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )], benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )], arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ),

- halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),
- 5 halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>),
- 10 halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted
- 15 benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,
- 20 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro. Alternatively R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-.

- W = (alpha-aminoacyl)amido (such as glycylamido, D-alanyl amido, D-
- 25 aspartylamido, D-glutamylamido, D-leucylamido, D-phenylalanyl amido, D-phenylglycylamido, or D-tyrosyl-amido), aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles [such as N-morpholinyl, N-
- 30 piperazinyl, N-pyrrolidinyl, N-imidazolyl, N-pyrrolyl, N-pyrazolyl, N-triazolyl, or N-tetrazolyl], substituted azaheterocycles [e.g., 2-(or 3-) alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)morpholinyl, 2-(3- or 4-) alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)piperazinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)pyrrolidinyl, 2-(or 3-)alkyl

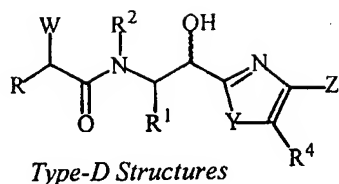


- C<sub>4</sub>), or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], isoquinolinyalkyl [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinolinyalkyl [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)].

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (*R*)- or (*S*)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

30

### Generics for Type-D Structures



When

A\* = carbonyl (C=O); M\* = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> (n = 0);

P\* = CH(OH) (R- or S- ) configuration

- R = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,  
 5 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.  
 Alternatively, R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

- R<sup>1</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,  
 10 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H, lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.  
 Alternatively, R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

15

R<sup>2</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl;R<sup>4</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl;

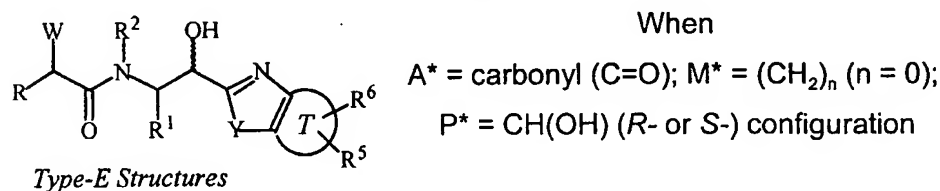
- 20 Y = CH, NR<sup>3</sup>, O, S (R<sup>3</sup> = H, lower alkyl, arylalkyl);

- Z = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, aryloxy, arylthio, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, aryloxycarbonyl, arylalkoxycarbonyl, carboxamido, naphthylaminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position), substituted naphthylaminocarbonyl, quinolylaminocarbonyl (2- to 8-position), substituted quinolylaminocarbonyl, naphthylalkylaminocarbonyl (1- or 2-position), quinolylalkylamino-carbonyl (2- to 8-position), thienylaminocarbonyl, substituted thienylaminocarbonyl, furylaminocarbonyl, substituted furylaminocarbonyl, or pyridylaminocarbonyl;
- 25

W = amino, azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, guanidino, or amidino.

- 5 Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (*R*)- or (*S*)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

### Generics for Type-E Structures



- 10  $R = \text{H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-furyl), 2-(3- or 4-pyridyl), arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl, (CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{NHC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{SC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{C}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{N}=\text{CNR}^b\text{R}^c \text{ (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); } R^a \text{ (R}^b \text{ or R}^c) = \text{H, lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.}$
- 15 Alternatively,  $R^a+R^b \text{ (or } R^b+R^c) = (\text{CH}_2)_{2,3} \text{ or } -\text{CH}=\text{CH}-;$

- $R^1 = \text{H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-furyl), 2-(3- or 4-pyridyl), arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl, (CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{NHC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{SC}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{C}=(\text{NR}^a)\text{NR}^b\text{R}^c, (\text{CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{N}=\text{CNR}^b\text{R}^c \text{ (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); } R^a \text{ (R}^b \text{ or R}^c) = \text{H, lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.}$
- 20 Alternatively,  $R^a+R^b \text{ (or } R^b+R^c) = (\text{CH}_2)_{2,3} \text{ or } -\text{CH}=\text{CH}-;$

$R^2 = \text{H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl};$

25

$R^5 = \text{H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, halogen, aryl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, aryloxy, or arylthio};$

$R^6 = H$ , lower alkyl, branched alkyl, halogen, aryl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, alkoxyl, alkylthio, aryloxy, or arylthio;

- 5  $T = 6\pi$ (or  $6\pi$ )-annelated ring system or substituted  $6\pi$ -annelated ring system (*e.g.*, benzo, pyrido, pyrimido, pyrazino, thieno, furano, pyrrolo, pyrazolo, imidazolo, thiazolo, or oxazolo);

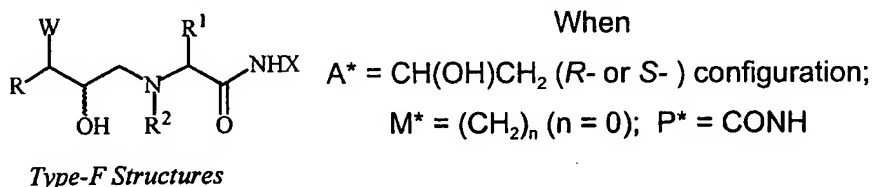
$Y = CH, NR^3, O, S$  ( $R^3 = H$ , lower alkyl, arylalkyl)

- 10  $W =$  amino, azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, guanidino, or amidino.

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (*R*)- or (*S*)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

15

### Generics for Type-F Structures



- $R = H$ , lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl,  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$ , or  $4$ );  $R^a$  ( $R^b$  or  $R^c$ ) =  $H$ , lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.
- Alternatively,  $R^a+R^b$  (or  $R^b+R^c$ ) =  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

- 25  $R^1 = H$ , lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl, pyridylalkyl,  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$ , or  $4$ );  $R^a$  ( $R^b$  or  $R^c$ ) =  $H$ ,



lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.

Alternatively,  $R^a+R^b$  (or  $R^b+R^c$ ) =  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

$R^2$  = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl;

5

X = aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxyl},

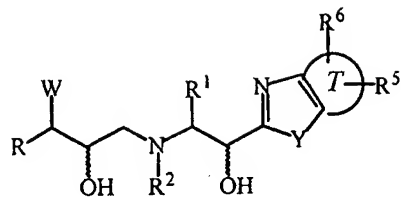
10 disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ) {any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinolinyl,

15 substituted quinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], isoquinolinyl, substituted isoquinolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, or amino], quinoxalinyl, substituted quinoxalinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )], quinazolinyl, substituted quinazolinyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )], benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )],

25 benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ )], arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )],

30 disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], or hydroxy}, substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ] {optionally substituted with alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ), halogen (Br, Cl, F

or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] {optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], or hydroxy}, quinolinyllalkyl [quinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinolinyllalkyl [quinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], isoquinolinyllalkyl [isoquinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinolinyll [isoquinolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), halogen (Br, Cl, F or I), hydroxy], quinoxalinyllalkyl [quinoxalinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyllalkyl [quinoxalinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], quinazolinyllalkyl [quinazolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinazolinyllalkyl [quinazolinyll(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4] [optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), amino, halogen (Br, Cl, F or I)], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4; optionally substituted with alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)].



Type-G Structures

When

A\* = CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (R- or S-) configuration;M\* = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> (n = 0);

P\* = CH(OH) (R- or S-) configuration

R = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-  
(or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl,  
pyridylalkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,  
5 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H,  
lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.  
Alternatively, R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

R<sup>1</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carboxyalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, aryl, 2-  
10 (or 3-thienyl), 2-(or 3-)furyl, 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl,  
pyridylalkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,  
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4); R<sup>a</sup> (R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>c</sup>) = H,  
lower alkyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro.  
Alternatively, R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> (or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup>) = (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

15

R<sup>2</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl;

20

R<sup>5</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, halogen, aryl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl,  
alkoxyl, alkylthio, aryloxy, or arylthio;R<sup>6</sup> = H, lower alkyl, branched alkyl, halogen, aryl, arylalkyl, thienylalkyl, furylalkyl,  
alkoxyl, alkylthio, aryloxy, or arylthio;

25

T = 6π (or 6 pi)-annulated ring system or substituted 6p-annulated ring system (e.g.,  
benzo, pyrido, pyrimido, pyrazino, thieno, furano, pyrrolo, pyrazolo, imidazolo,  
thiazolo, or oxazolo);

Y = CH, NR<sup>3</sup>, O, S (R<sup>3</sup> = H, lower alkyl, arylalkyl);

W = amino, azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, guanidino, or amidino.

5

Where there are centers of asymmetry, the absolute stereochemistry can be either (*R*)- or (*S*)- configuration and any combination of configuration.

10 In the generic descriptions of compounds of this invention, the number of atoms of a particular type in a substituent group is generally given as a range. For example, an alkyl group containing from 1 to 4 carbon atoms is indicated as alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), or as (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl. Such a range reference is intended to include specific references to groups having each of the integer number of atoms within the specified range. For example, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> includes each of C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub> and C<sub>4</sub>. Other numbers of atoms and other types of  
15 atoms are indicated in a similar manner. Similarly, where a range is indicated as a range of integer values, e.g., in the form 1-4, 1-5, 1-6, 4-10, etc. each integer in the range is specifically indicated, as well as subranges within the broader range.

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "alkyl" refers to a branched or unbranched aliphatic hydrocarbon group, preferably having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and more  
20 preferably 1 to 4 carbon atoms. Preferably the hydrocarbon group is saturated. The alkyl group may optionally be substituted, and some preferred substituents include alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino, and carboxy groups.

The term "lower alkyl" refers to an aliphatic hydrocarbon having 1 to 6 carbons,  
25 and preferably 1 to 4 carbon atoms (i.e., 1, 2, 3, or 4 carbon atoms). The lower alkyl group may be substituted; preferred substituents include alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino, and carboxy.

The term "branched alkyl" refers to a branched aliphatic hydrocarbon. The branched alkyl group is preferably 3 to 10 (i.e., 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 or 10 carbon atoms)  
30 carbons, and most preferably 3 to 6 carbons (i.e., 3, 4, 5, or 6 carbon atoms). The branched alkyl group may be substituted and some preferred substituents include alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino, and

carboxy.

The term "fluoroalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group which is substituted with a fluorine. The term "perfluoroalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group which is substituted with a fluorine atom in every available position except for where the lower alkyl group is attached to the main chain.

The term "carboxyalkyl" refers to a chemical moiety with formula  $-(R)_n-COOH$ , where R is an alkyl moiety, preferably a saturated alkyl, and where n is 0-5.

The term "hydroxyalkyl" refers to a chemical moiety with the formula  $-(R)_n-OH$ , where R is an alkyl moiety and where n is 1-4, i.e., 1,2,3 or 4.

The term "alkoxy" refers to a chemical substituent of formula  $-OR$ , where R is a saturated or unsaturated lower alkyl moiety.

"Mercapto" or "thiol" refers to the group  $-SH$ .

The term "alkylthio" refers to a chemical substituent of formula  $-SR$ , where R is hydrogen or a saturated or unsaturated lower alkyl moiety.

The term "aryl" refers to an aromatic group which has at least one ring having a conjugated pi ( $\pi$ ) electron system and includes both carbocyclic aryl (e.g. phenyl) and heterocyclic aryl groups (e.g. pyridine). The aryl group is preferably 6 to 14 carbons, more preferably 6 to 10 carbons. Aryl moieties include monocyclic, bicyclic, and tricyclic rings, where each ring has preferably five or six members. The aryl moiety may be optionally monosubstituted or disubstituted with lower alkyl, hydroxyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, and disubstituted amino. When disubstituted, the substituents are independently selected and may be the same or different. Thus, the term "monosubstituted aryl" refers to an aryl group substituted with a group selected from alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, hydroxyl, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The terms "aryloxy" and "arylthio" refer to an aromatic group that is bonded through either oxygen or sulfur, respectively. The aromatic group which has at least one ring having a conjugated pi-electron system and includes both carbocyclic aryl (e.g. phenyl) and heterocyclic aryl groups (e.g. pyridine). The aryl group is preferably 6 to 14 carbons, more preferably 6 to 10 carbons. Aryl moieties include monocyclic, bicyclic, and tricyclic rings, where each ring has preferably five or six members. The aryl moiety may be optionally monosubstituted or disubstituted with lower alkyl,

hydroxyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, and disubstituted amino.

The term "carbocyclic" refers to a compound which contains one or more covalently closed ring structures, and that the atoms forming the backbone of the ring are all carbon atoms. The term thus distinguishes carbocyclic from heterocyclic rings in which the ring backbone contains carbon atoms and at least one atom which is different from carbon (*e.g.*, N, O, P, S, Se, Si).

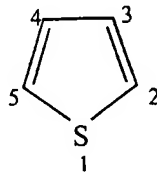
Thus, the term "azaheterocycle" refers to a heterocyclic group which includes at least one nitrogen atom in a ring. Preferably the azaheterocyclic group is a N-morpholinyl, N-thiomorpholinyl, N-piperazinyl, N-pyrrolidinyl, N-imidazolyl, N-pyrrolyl, N-pyrazolyl, N-triazolyl, and N-tetrazolyl group. The azaheterocyclic group may also be substituted as recognized in the art, forming a substituted azaheterocycle, preferably a 2-(or 3-) lower alkylmorpholinyl, 2-(3- or 4-)lower alkylthiomorpholinyl, 2-(3- or 4-) lower alkylpiperazinyl, 2-(or 3-) lower alkylpyrrolidinyl, 2-(or 3-) lower alkylmorpholinyl, 2-(or 3-) lower alkylpyrrolyl group.

"Halogen" or "halo" refers to F, Br, Cl, or I, but is preferably F or Br, and more preferably is F.

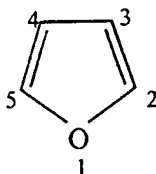
"Hydroxyl" or "hydroxy" refers to the group -OH.

The term "amino" means the group  $\text{NRR}'$ , where R and R' may independently be alkyl or hydrogen or hydroxyl, but preferably are hydrogen. The term "monosubstituted amino" refers to an amino group in which one of R or R' is alkyl. The term "disubstituted amino" refers to an amino group in which R and R' are each independently alkyl or hydroxyl, and may be the same or different.

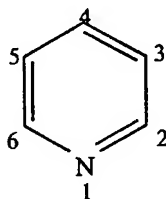
The term "thienyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure shown immediately below. The thienyl group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through position 2 or 3 on the ring and may be optionally independently substituted with one or more lower alkyl or alkenyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, mercapto, halogen, haloalkyl, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.



The term "furyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure shown immediately below. The furyl group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through position 2 or 3 on the ring and may be optionally independently substituted with one or more lower alkyl or alkenyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, mercapto, halogen, haloalkyl, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

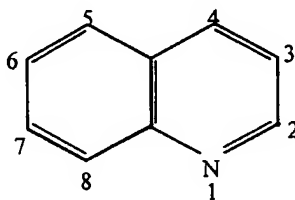


The term "pyridyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure shown immediately below. The pyridyl group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through position 2, 3, or 4 on the ring and may be optionally substituted independently with lower alkyl, or alkenyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, mercapto, halogen, haloalkyl, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.



15

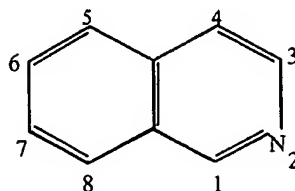
The term "quinolyl" refers to a group having the core ring structure below. The quinolyl group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through positions 2,3,4,5,6,7, or 8. The group may optionally be independently substituted by one or more groups as indicated for the thienyl group above.



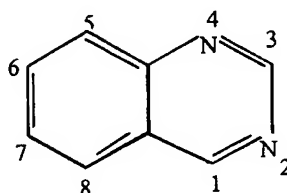
20

The term "isoquinolyl" refers to a group with core ring structure shown below. The isoquinolyl group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through positions 1,3,4,5,6,7, or 8. The group may optionally be substituted independently by one or

more groups as indicated for the thienyl group above.



5 The term “quinazolyl” refers to a group which has the core ring structure below.



The group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through positions 1,3,5,6,7, or 8. The group may optionally be substituted independently by one or more groups as indicated for the thienyl group above.

10 The term “arylalkyl” refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an aryl group. An example of an arylalkyl group is benzyl where a methyl group is substituted with phenyl. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

15 amino. The arylalkyl group may be aryl-substituted where the aryl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, hydroxy, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term “thienylalkyl” refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with a thienyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The thienylalkyl group may be thienyl-substituted where the thienyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

20

The term “furylalkyl” refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with a furyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy,

25



alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The furylalkyl group may be furyl-substituted where the furyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

5           The term "pyridylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with a pyridyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The pyridylalkyl group may be pyridyl-substituted where the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino,  
10       monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

          The term "benzothienylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with a benzothienyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The benzothienylalkyl group may be benzothienyl-substituted where the  
15       benzothienyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

          The term "indolylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an indole group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The  
20       indolylalkyl group may be indole-substituted where the indole group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

          The term " $\alpha$ -amino acyl" refers to a group  $\text{RCH}(\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2)\text{C}(\text{O})$ -where  $\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2$  is an optionally substituted amino group and R is H or a saturated or unsaturated  
25       hydrocarbon, preferably of 1-6, more preferably 1-4 carbon atoms. The term " $\beta$ -amino acyl" refers to a group  $\text{R-CH}(\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})$ -, where the components are as just described.

          The term "( $\alpha$ -aminoacyl)amido" refers to a group having an amide linkage and which is  $\alpha$ -amino substituted. Preferably the group is an amide-linked  $\alpha$ -amino acid, which may optionally be substituted, for example, glycylamido,  
30       D-alanyl amido, D-aspartyl amido, D-glutamyl amido, D-leucyl amido, D-phenylalanyl amido, D-phenylglycyl amido, D-tyrosyl amido.

The term "aminoalkyl" refers to an amino substituted lower alkyl group, preferably  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$  where  $n = 1-4$ ;  $R^b$  and/or  $R^c$  is H, lower alkyl, aryl.

The term "quinolinylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an quinolinyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The quinolinylalkyl group may be quinolinyl-substituted where the quinolinyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "isoquinolinylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an isoquinolinyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The isoquinolinylalkyl group may be isoquinolinyl-substituted where the quinolinyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "quinoxalinyllalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an quinoxalinyll group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The quinoxalinyllalkyl group may be quinoxalinyll-substituted where the quinolinyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

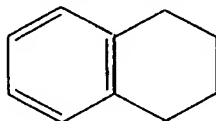
The term "quinazolinylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an quinazolinyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The quinazolinylalkyl group may be quinazolinyl-substituted where the quinazolinylgroup is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "benzimidazolylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an benzimidazolyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The benzimidazolylalkyl group may be benzimidazolyl-substituted where the quinazolinylgroup is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

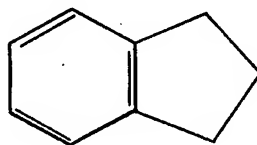
The term "benzothiazolylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an benzothiazolyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino. The benzothiazolylalkyl group may be benzothiazolyl-substituted where the  
5 quinazolinyllgroup is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "benzoxazolylalkyl" refers to a lower alkyl group substituted with an benzoxazolyl group. The lower alkyl group may be optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted  
10 amino. The benzoxazolylalkyl group may be benzoxazolyl-substituted where the benzoxazolyl group is optionally substituted with a lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "tetrahydronaphthyl" refers to a group which has a core ring structure of a phenyl ring fused to a cyclohexyl ring, as shown in the structure below, where the  
15 attachment to the rest of the molecule can be on either the phenyl ring or on the cyclohexyl ring. The group may optionally be substituted independently with one or more of lower alkyl or alkenyl, halogeno, hydroxy, alkyloxy, alkylthio, amino, monosubstituted amino, and disubstituted amino.



The term "indanyl" refers to a group which has the core bicyclic ring structure  
20 below.



which may optionally be independently substituted with one or more of lower alkyl or alkenyl, halogeno, hydroxy, alkyloxy, alkylthio, amino, monosubstituted amino, and disubstituted amino. The group may be attached to the rest of the molecule through  
25 either the phenyl ring or through the 5-membered ring.

The term "benzofuranyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure

of Structure A below. The benzofuranyl group may be optionally substituted with lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

5 The term "benzothienyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure of Structure B below. The benzothienyl group may be optionally substituted with lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

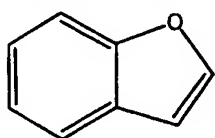
The term "indolyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure of Structure C below. The indolyl group may be optionally substituted with lower  
10 alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

The term "benzimidazolyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure of Structure D below. The benzimidazolyl group may be optionally substituted with lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino,  
15 monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

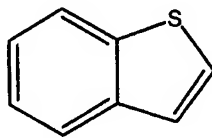
The term "benzothiazolyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure of Structure F below. The benzothiazolyl group may be optionally substituted with lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

20 The term "benzoxazolyl" refers to a group which has the core ring structure of Structure E below. The benzoxazolyl group may be optionally substituted with lower alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, halogen, amino, monosubstituted amino, or disubstituted amino.

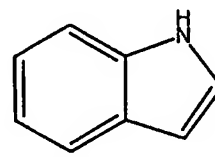
25



Structure A

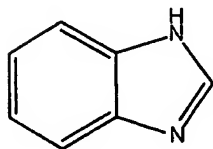


Structure B

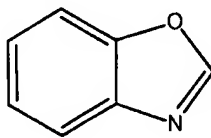


Structure C

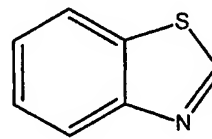
30



Structure D



Structure E



Structure F

5

The generic compound descriptions above should be understood to include additional narrower generic descriptions in which the possible substituents for one or more of the specified substituent groups or substitutions (e.g., W, R, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, X, M\*, P\*, S\*) is limited to a subset of the listed groups.

10

Compounds within the generic description above can be obtained by synthetic chemistry methods known to those skilled in the chemical arts as exemplified in the Examples below. Levofloxacin MICs in the presence of specific compound examples within the generic description are provided in the Detailed Description below in connection with Tables 1-5.

15

Reference to efflux pump inhibitors in the aspects of the invention described below refers to compounds within the generic compound descriptions above having efflux pump inhibitor activity.

20

A particularly appropriate example of a microbe appropriate for the use of an efflux pump inhibitor is a pathogenic bacterial species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, which is intrinsically resistant to many of the commonly used antibacterial agents. Exposing this bacterium to an efflux pump inhibitor can significantly slow the export of an antibacterial agent from the interior of the cell or the export of siderophores. Therefore, if another antibacterial agent is administered in conjunction with the efflux pump inhibitor, the antibacterial agent, which would otherwise be maintained at a very low intracellular concentration by the export process, can accumulate to a concentration which will inhibit the growth of the bacterial cells. This growth inhibition can be due to either bacteriostatic or bactericidal activity, depending on the specific antibacterial agent used. While *P. aeruginosa* is an example of an appropriate bacterium, other bacterial and microbial species may contain similar broad substrate pumps, which actively export a variety of antimicrobial agents, and thus can also be appropriate targets.

25

30

In addition as suggested above, for some microbial, e.g., bacterial, species,

efflux pump inhibitors can decrease the virulence of the microbe, for example, by inhibiting the transport of factors important for pathogenicity. Again using *P. aeruginosa* as an example, inhibition of an efflux pump in this bacterium inhibits the uptake of iron, which is important for pathogenicity. The mechanism of bacterial iron transport involves molecules called siderophores, which are synthesized and exported by bacterial cells via efflux pumps. These siderophores bind tightly to iron scavenged from the host, and are then taken up by the bacteria. In this way, the iron needed for bacterial metabolism is obtained, and an infection can be maintained.

Therefore, illustrating the utility of efflux pump inhibitors, inhibiting the efflux pump of *P. aeruginosa* allows obtaining one or more of the following biological effects:

1. *P. aeruginosa* strains will become susceptible to antibiotics that could not be used for treatment of pseudomonad infections, or become more susceptible to antibiotics which do inhibit pseudomonal growth.
2. *P. aeruginosa* strains will become more susceptible to antibiotics currently used for treatment of pseudomonad infections.
3. Virulence of *P. aeruginosa* will be attenuated because the availability of iron will be hampered.
4. The inhibition of the pump or of one of the components of the pump may be lethal or prevent growth.

Obtaining even one of these effects provides a potential therapeutic treatment for infections by this bacterium. Also, as previously mentioned, similar pumps are found in other microorganisms. Some or all of the above effects can also be obtained with those microbes, and they are therefore also appropriate targets for detecting or using efflux pump inhibitors. Thus, the term "microbes" include, for example, bacteria, fungi, yeasts, and protozoa.

As indicated, the bacterium to be inhibited through the use of an efflux pump inhibitor can be from other bacterial groups or species, such as one of the following: *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *Pseudomonas acidovorans*, *Pseudomonas alcaligenes*, *Pseudomonas putida*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, *Burkholderia cepacia*, *Aeromonas hydrophilia*, *Escherichia coli*, *Citrobacter freundii*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella paratyphi*,

- Salmonella enteritidis*, *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella sonnei*,  
*Enterobacter cloacae*, *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Klebsiella*  
*oxytoca*, *Serratia marcescens*, *Francisella tularensis*, *Morganella morganii*, *Proteus*  
*mirabilis*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Providencia alcalifaciens*, *Providencia rettgeri*,  
5 *Providencia stuartii*, *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus*, *Acinetobacter haemolyticus*,  
*Yersinia enterocolitica*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*, *Yersinia*  
*intermedia*, *Bordetella pertussis*, *Bordetella parapertussis*, *Bordetella*  
*bronchiseptica*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Haemophilus parainfluenzae*,  
*Haemophilus haemolyticus*, *Haemophilus parahaemolyticus*, *Haemophilus ducreyi*,  
10 *Pasteurella multocida*, *Pasteurella haemolytica*, *Branhamella catarrhalis*,  
*Helicobacter pylori*, *Campylobacter fetus*, *Campylobacter jejuni*, *Campylobacter*  
*coli*, *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Vibrio cholerae*, *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*, *Legionella*  
*pneumophila*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Neisseria*  
*meningitidis*, *Kingella*, *Moraxella*, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Bacteroides fragilis*,  
15 *Bacteroides distasonis*, *Bacteroides* 3452A homology group, *Bacteroides vulgatus*,  
*Bacteroides ovalus*, *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron*, *Bacteroides uniformis*,  
*Bacteroides eggerthii*, *Bacteroides splanchnicus*, *Clostridium difficile*,  
*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Mycobacterium avium*, *Mycobacterium intracellulare*,  
*Mycobacterium leprae*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Corynebacterium ulcerans*,  
20 *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus agalactiae*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*,  
*Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterococcus faecium*, *Staphylococcus aureus*,  
*Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*, *Staphylococcus*  
*intermedius*, *Staphylococcus hyicus* subsp. *hyicus*, *Staphylococcus haemolyticus*,  
*Staphylococcus hominis*, *Staphylococcus saccharolyticus*.

- 25       The term "efflux pump" refers to a protein assembly which exports substrate  
molecules from the cytoplasm or periplasm of a cell, in an energy dependent fashion.  
Thus an efflux pump will typically be located in the cytoplasmic membrane of the  
cell (spanning the cytoplasmic membrane). In Gram-negative bacteria the pump  
may span the periplasmic space and there may also be portion of the efflux pump  
30 which spans the outer membrane. Certain efflux pumps will include a polypeptide  
which has at least 50% amino acid sequence similarity with a polypeptide which is  
part of the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* mexA/mexB/oprM efflux pump or the efflux

pump overexpressed by *P. aeruginosa* Strain K385, or the efflux pump overexpressed by *P. aeruginosa* Strain PAO4098E. Due to the described sequence similarity of a component polypeptide of the efflux pump, such an efflux pump is termed a *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*-type efflux pump.

5           The term "non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump" refers to an efflux pump which is not highly specific for tetracycline (relative to other antibiotics) and thus is not a tetracycline (tetracycline-specific) efflux pump. The term thus includes broad substrate pumps (efflux a number of compounds with varying structural characteristics) and pumps which are highly specific for compounds (including  
10 antibiotics) other than tetracyclines. Tetracycline efflux pumps are involved in specific resistance to tetracycline in bacteria. (Speer et al., 1992, *Clin. Microbiol. Rev.* 5: 387-399.) As noted, these pumps are highly specific for tetracyclines, and their presence confers high tetracycline resistance to the cell. However, they do not confer resistance to other antibiotics. The genes for the tetracycline pump  
15 components are found in plasmids in Gram-negative as well as in Gram-positive bacteria and can be divided in two main groups, *tetA(A-E)*, and *tetK* and *tetL*. TetA-E tetracycline resistance determinants contain a structural gene, *tetA*, which is a tetracycline specific pump, and a repressor gene, *tetR*, that mediates inducible resistance to tetracyclines. Tetracycline efflux pumps belonging to this group are  
20 designated *tetA(A)*, *tetA(B)*, *tetA(D)*, and *tetA(E)*, and are found in *Enterobacteriaceae* and other Gram-negative bacteria. TetK and TetL are pumps involved in tetracycline resistance in Gram-positive bacteria. The genes are regulated via translational attenuation and are not homologous to *tetA* group.

          An "efflux pump inhibitor" is a compound which specifically interferes with  
25 the ability of an efflux pump to export its normal substrate, or other compounds such as an antibiotic. The inhibitor may have intrinsic antimicrobial (*e.g.*, antibacterial) activity of its own, but at least a significant portion of the relevant activity is due to the efflux pump inhibiting activity. Of particular interest in this invention, are compounds which inhibit the export or activity of efflux pumps which have a broad  
30 substrate range which includes antibacterial agents. The term "non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump inhibitor" refers to an efflux pump inhibitor which inhibits a non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump. The term "*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*-type



efflux pump inhibitor" refers to an efflux pump inhibitor which inhibits a *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*-type efflux pump. A "*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* efflux pump inhibitor" is an efflux pump inhibitor which inhibits the export activity of an efflux pump found in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

5 By "comprising" it is meant including, but not limited to, whatever follows the word "comprising". Thus, use of the term "comprising" indicates that the listed elements are required or mandatory, but that other elements are optional and may or may not be present. By "consisting of" is meant including, and limited to, whatever follows the phrase "consisting of". Thus, the phrase "consisting of" indicates that  
10 the listed elements are required or mandatory, and that no other elements may be present. By "consisting essentially of" is meant including any elements listed after the phrase, and limited to other elements that do not interfere with or contribute to the activity or action specified in the disclosure for the listed elements. Thus, the phrase "consisting essentially of" indicates that the listed elements are required or  
15 mandatory, but that other elements are optional and may or may not be present depending upon whether or not they affect the activity or action of the listed elements.

In a first aspect, this invention provides a method for treating a microbial infection, *e.g.*, a bacterial infection, in an animal by administering to an animal  
20 suffering from such an infection an efflux pump inhibitor as described above, *e.g.*, by generic structure descriptions of Structures 1, and Types A,B,C,D,E,F and G structures, in an amount sufficient to reduce efflux pump activity in a microbe involved in the infection.

In the context of this invention, a microbe is "involved" in an infection if the  
25 presence of the microbe causes the infection, at least in part, or contributes to the course of the infection, or causes or contributes to the symptoms or physiological effects caused in the host animal by the infection. The microbe need not be the only or even principal microbe present at an infection site.

In a preferred embodiment, the inhibitor is one which decreases the  
30 pathogenicity of the microbe. Such a decrease in pathogenicity can be obtained, for example, by interfering with bacterial iron acquisition by inhibiting the transport of siderophores. The pathogenicity may also be reduced by reducing or eliminating the

microbial products which cause tissue-damaging effects to the host. Other methods of reducing pathogenicity are, however, also within this aspect. The animal may be, for example, chickens and turkeys, and in certain preferred embodiments is a mammal, *e.g.*, a human.

5           In certain preferred embodiments, the microbial infection may be due to bacteria, which may, for example, be any of the bacterial species indicated above, but specifically including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

          In a related aspect, this invention provides a method of treating an animal suffering from a microbial infection by administering to the animal an efflux pump  
10   inhibitor as described above in an amount sufficient to reduce efflux pump activity. In this aspect, the efflux pump inhibitor is one which reduces the *in vivo* viability of a microbe involved in the infection. By reducing the *in vivo* viability, the infected animal can more readily clear its body of the infection, or the microbes may even be killed. In particular embodiments the animal is a mammal. Also in particular  
15   embodiments, the microbe may be from one of a variety of pathogenic bacterial species, specifically including those listed above.

          The term "*in vivo* viability" refers to the ability of a microbe, *e.g.*, a bacterium, to survive or grow in a host, such as an animal. Therefore, an efflux pump inhibitor which reduces the *in vivo* viability of a microbe may stop the growth  
20   of the microbe and/or kill the microbe. Such efflux pump inhibitors, therefore are antimicrobial agents.

          In a further related aspect, this invention includes a method for prophylactic treatment of an animal, *e.g.*, a mammal. In this method, an efflux pump inhibitor which reduces the pathogenicity of a microbe is administered to a mammal at risk of  
25   a microbial infection, *e.g.*, a bacterial infection.

          In a related aspect, the invention provides a method for treating a microbial infection in an animal, specifically including in a mammal, by treating an animal suffering from such an infection with an antimicrobial agent in conjunction with an efflux pump inhibitor which increase the susceptibility of the microbe for that  
30   antimicrobial agent. In this way a microbe involved in the infection can be treated using the antimicrobial agent in smaller quantities, or can be treated with an antimicrobial agent which is not therapeutically effective when used in the absence

of the efflux pump inhibitor. Thus, this method of treatment is especially appropriate for the treatment of infections involving microbial strains which are difficult to treat using an antimicrobial agent alone due to a need for high dosage levels (which can cause undesirable side effects), or due to lack of any clinically effective antimicrobial agents. However, it is also appropriate for treating infections involving microbes which are susceptible to particular antimicrobial agents as a way to reduce the dosage of those particular agents. This can reduce the risk of side effects, but can also reduce the selection effect for highly resistant microbes resulting from the consistent high level use of a particular antimicrobial agent.

10 In the context of the methods of this invention, an antimicrobial agent is used "in conjunction" with an efflux pump inhibitor (or the converse) if the antimicrobial agent and the efflux pump inhibitor are provided sufficiently closely temporally so that there is overlap in the physiological levels of each of the two so that a joint effect can be created. Thus, the antimicrobial agent and the efflux pump inhibitor  
15 can be administered to an animal jointly, or either can be administered before the other, but sufficiently closely in time so that the efflux pump inhibitor can inhibit a target efflux pump during a time period when the extracellular concentration of the antimicrobial agent is at or above the level required to inhibit a relevant microbe in the presence of efflux pump inhibition. Those skilled in the art can readily estimate  
20 or determine such times based, for example, on serum half-lives of the compounds involved, empirical results of infection response, levels of excreted compounds or degradation products of the compounds, and/or other appropriate parameters. Preferably, the antimicrobial agent and the efflux pump inhibitor are administered such that the second compound administered is administered within 10% of the  
25 serum half-life of the first administered compound.

In preferred embodiments, the antimicrobial agent is a compound which is effluxed by efflux pumps in microbes involved in the infection.

In preferred embodiments, the microbe is a fungus, where the term fungus is as generally understood by those skilled in the art.

30 In particular embodiments the microbe is a bacterium, which may, for example, be from any of the groups or species indicated above. Also in particular embodiments various antibacterial agents can be used. These include quinolones,

tetracyclines, glycopeptides, aminoglycosides,  $\beta$ -lactams, rifamycins, coumermycins, macrolides, oxazolidinones, and chloramphenicol. In particular embodiments an antibiotic of the above classes can be, for example, one of the following:

5  $\beta$ -Lactam Antibiotics

imipenem, meropenem, biapenem, cefaclor, cefadroxil, cefamandole, cefatrizine, cefazedone, cefazolin, cefixime, cefmenoxime, cefodizime, cefonicid, cefoperazone, ceforanide, cefotaxime, cefotiam, cefpimizole, cefpiramide, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, ceftazidime, ceftaram, ceftazole, ceftibuten, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, 10 cefuroxime, cefuzonam, cephaacetrile, cephalixin, cephaloglycin, cephaloridine, cephalothin, cephapirin, cephradine, cefmetazole, cefoxitin, cefotetan, azthreonam, carumonam, flomoxef, moxalactam, amidinocillin, amoxicillin, ampicillin, azlocillin, carbenicillin, benzylpenicillin, carfecillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, methicillin, mezlocillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, penicillin G, piperacillin, sulbenicillin, temocillin, ticarcillin, cefditoren, SC004, KY-020, cefdinir, ceftibuten, FK-312, 15 S-1090, CP-0467, BK-218, FK-037, DQ-2556, FK-518, cefozopran, ME1228, KP-736, CP-6232, Ro 09-1227, OPC-20000, LY206763

Macrolides

azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, oleandomycin, rokitamycin, 20 rosaramicin, roxithromycin, troleandomycin

Quinolones

amifloxacin, cinoxacin, ciprofloxacin, enoxacin, fleroxacin, flumequine, lomefloxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ofloxacin, levofloxacin, oxolinic acid, pefloxacin, rosoxacin, temafloxacin, tosufloxacin, sparfloxacin, clinafloxacin, 25 PD131628, PD138312, PD140248, Q-35, AM-1155, NM394, T-3761, rifloxacin, OPC-17116, DU-6859a (identified in Sato, K. et al., 1992, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 37:1491-98), DV-7751a (identified in Tanaka, M. et al., 1992, *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 37:2212-18)

Tetracyclines

30 chlortetracycline, demeclocycline, doxycycline, lymecycline, methacycline, minocycline, oxytetracycline, tetracycline

Aminoglycosides

amikacin, arbekacin, butirosin, dibekacin, fortimicins, gentamicin, kanamycin, meomycin, netilmicin, ribostamycin, sisomicin, spectinomycin, streptomycin, tobramycin, clindamycin, lincomycin

Oxazolidinones

- 5 Linezolid(U-100766), eperezolide(U-100592).

Each of the above compounds have been reported in the literature.

Other antibiotic compounds which may be identified which are effluxed by particular bacteria can also be utilized with the efflux pump inhibitors of this invention.

- 10 In a further related aspect, this invention includes a method for prophylactic treatment of a mammal. In this method, an antimicrobial agent and an efflux pump inhibitor is administered to a mammal at risk of a microbial infection, *e.g.*, a bacterial infection or a fungal infection. Preferred embodiments include those as described above, for example, embodiments including various bacteria and  
15 antimicrobial agents as described.

- In the context of the response of a microbe, such as a bacterium or fungus, to an antimicrobial agent, the term "susceptibility" refers to the sensitivity of the microbe for the presence of the antimicrobial agent. So, to increase the susceptibility means that the microbe will be inhibited by a lower concentration of  
20 the antimicrobial agent in the medium surrounding the microbial cells. This is equivalent to saying that the microbe is more sensitive to the antimicrobial agent. In most cases the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of that antimicrobial agent will have been reduced.

- As used herein, the term "treating" refers to administering a pharmaceutical  
25 composition for prophylactic and/or therapeutic purposes. The term "prophylactic treatment" refers to treating a patient who is not yet infected, but who is susceptible to, or otherwise at risk of, a particular infection. The term "therapeutic treatment" refers to administering treatment to a patient already suffering from an infection. Thus, in preferred embodiments, treating is the administration to a mammal (either for  
30 therapeutic or prophylactic purposes) of therapeutically effective amounts of a potentiator and an antibacterial (or antimicrobial) agent in combination (either simultaneously or serially).

By "therapeutically effective amount" or "pharmaceutically effective amount" is meant an amount of an efflux pump inhibitor, or amounts individually of an efflux pump inhibitor and an antimicrobial agent, as disclosed for this invention, which have a therapeutic effect, which generally refers to the inhibition to some extent of the normal metabolism of microbial cells causing or contributing to a microbial infection. The doses of efflux pump inhibitor and antimicrobial agent which are useful in combination as a treatment are therapeutically effective amounts. Thus, as used herein, a therapeutically effective amount means those amounts of efflux pump inhibitor and antimicrobial agent which, when used in combination, produce the desired therapeutic effect as judged by clinical trial results and/or model animal infection studies. In particular embodiments, the efflux pump inhibitor and antimicrobial agent are combined in pre-determined proportions and thus a therapeutically effective amount would be an amount of the combination. This amount and the amount of the efflux pump inhibitor and antimicrobial agent individually can be routinely determined by one of skill in the art, and will vary, depending on several factors, such as the particular microbial strain involved and the particular efflux pump inhibitor and antimicrobial agent used. This amount can further depend upon the patient's height, weight, sex, age and medical history. For prophylactic treatments, a therapeutically effective amount is that amount which would be effective if a microbial infection existed.

A therapeutic effect relieves, to some extent, one or more of the symptoms of the infection, and includes curing an infection. "Curing" means that the symptoms of active infection are eliminated, including the elimination of excessive members of viable microbe of those involved in the infection. However, certain long-term or permanent effects of the infection may exist even after a cure is obtained (such as extensive tissue damage).

The term "microbial infection" refers to the invasion of the host mammal by pathogenic microbes. This includes the excessive growth of microbes which are normally present in or on the body of a mammal. More generally, a microbial infection can be any situation in which the presence of a microbial population(s) is damaging to a host mammal. Thus, a mammal is "suffering" from a microbial infection when excessive numbers of a microbial population are present in or on a mammal's body, or when the effects of the presence of a microbial population(s) is damaging the cells or

other tissue of a mammal. Specifically, this description applies to a bacterial infection.

The term "administration" or "administering" refers to a method of giving a dosage of an antimicrobial pharmaceutical composition to a mammal, where the method is, *e.g.*, topical, oral, intravenous, intraperitoneal, or intramuscular. The preferred  
5 method of administration can vary depending on various factors, *e.g.*, the components of the pharmaceutical composition, the site of the potential or actual bacterial infection, the microbe involved, and the severity of an actual microbial infection.

The term "mammal" is used in its usual biological sense. Thus, it specifically includes humans, cattle, horses, dogs, and cats, but also includes many other species.

10 In another aspect, this invention also features a method of inhibiting a membrane channel in a cellular membrane, involving contacting the membrane channel with a membrane channel inhibitor, where the inhibitor reduces the effluxing capacity of the membrane channel. In specific embodiments, at least one polypeptide of the membrane channel has at least 50% amino acid sequence similarity with a polypeptide  
15 of the *mexA/mexB/oprM* efflux pump, or of the efflux pump overexpressed by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Strain K385.

As used herein, the term "membrane channel" refers to a protein assembly located in the cellular membrane of a cell which allows the transport of one or more types of molecules across the membrane. Such transport may be either passive  
20 transport in response to concentration gradients, or may be active transport which depends upon a cellular energy source.

A "membrane channel inhibitor" then is, similar to an efflux pump inhibitor, a compound which slows or prevents the transport of molecules across the cellular membrane using the corresponding membrane channel.

25 This invention also features a method of enhancing the antimicrobial activity of an antimicrobial agent against a microbe, in which such a microbe is contacted with an efflux pump inhibitor, *e.g.*, a non-tetracycline specific efflux pump inhibitor, to an efflux pump in the cell, and an antibacterial agent. The efflux pump inhibitor is a compound as described above. Thus, this method makes an antimicrobial agent more  
30 effective against a cell which expresses an efflux pump when the cell is treated with the combination of an antimicrobial agent and a non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump inhibitor. In particular embodiments the microbe is a bacterium or a fungus, such as

any of those indicated above; the antimicrobial agent is as described above; and an antibacterial agent is selected from a number of structural classes of antibiotics including, *e.g.*,  $\beta$ -lactams, glycopeptides, aminoglycosides, quinolones, tetracyclines, rifamycins, coumermycins, macrolides, oxazolidinones, and chloramphenicol. In particular embodiments an antibiotic of the above classes can be a compound as stated above.

In a further aspect this invention provides pharmaceutical compositions effective for treatment of an infection of an animal, *e.g.*, a mammal, by a microbe, such as a bacterium or a fungus. The composition includes a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an efflux pump inhibitor as described above. In preferred embodiments, such compositions contain efflux pump inhibitors which are themselves effective antimicrobial agents, even in the absence of another antimicrobial agent (*i.e.*, have intrinsic antimicrobial activity). Thus, pharmaceutical compositions including such efflux pump inhibitors can be used either alone or in conjunction with another antimicrobial agent. Also in preferred embodiments, the efflux pump inhibitors in pharmaceutical compositions of this aspect are efflux pump inhibitors which enhance the effectiveness of an antimicrobial agent other than the efflux pump inhibitor, so such compositions would generally be used in combination with such other antimicrobial agent.

The invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions similarly effective for treatment of an infection of a mammal which include an efflux pump inhibitor and an antimicrobial agent, *e.g.*, an antibacterial agent or an antifungal agent.

Similarly, the invention provides antimicrobial formulations which include an antimicrobial agent, an efflux pump inhibitor, and a carrier. In preferred embodiments, the antimicrobial agent is an antimicrobial agent or an antibacterial agent as described above.

A "carrier" or "excipient" is a compound or material used to facilitate administration of the compound, for example, to increase the solubility of the compound. Solid carriers include, *e.g.*, starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, sucrose, and kaolin. Liquid carriers include, *e.g.*, sterile water, saline, buffers, non-ionic surfactants, and edible oils such as oil, peanut and sesame oils. In addition, various adjuvants such as are commonly used in the art may be included. These and other such



compounds are described in the literature, *e.g.*, in the *Merck Index*, Merck & Company, Rahway, NJ. Considerations for the inclusion of various components in pharmaceutical compositions are described, *e.g.*, in Gilman et al. (Eds.) (1990); Goodman and Gilman's: The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 8th Ed., Pergamon Press.

5           In yet another aspect, the invention provides a method of suppressing growth of a microbe, *e.g.*, a bacterium, expressing an efflux pump, *e.g.*, a non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump. As illustrated by the case where the microbe is a bacterium, the method involves contacting that bacterium with an efflux pump inhibitor as described above, *e.g.*, a non-tetracycline-specific efflux pump inhibitor, in the presence of a  
10           concentration of antibacterial agent below the MIC of the bacterium (or other microbe). This method is useful, for example, to prevent or cure contamination of a cell culture by a bacterium possessing an efflux pump. However, it applies to any situation where such growth suppression is desirable.

          In another related aspect, the invention provides a method for reducing a  
15           population of a microbial, *e.g.*, a bacterial strain, involving contacting the population with an efflux pump inhibitor which inhibits a component of an efflux pump expressed in the microbe in that population, which is essential for the growth of the microbe expressing that efflux pump. In particular embodiments, that component is a cytoplasmic membrane component. As indicated above, such efflux pump inhibitors  
20           may act in various ways, including, but not limited to, acting directly on the essential component, or acting to inhibit the expression of that component. In preferred embodiments of these aspects the microbe or bacterium is as described above.

          The term "reducing a population" means that the microbes of that population are being killed. This is distinguished from the action of a static agent, *e.g.*, a  
25           bacteriostatic agent, which prevents the bacteria from growing and multiplying but does not kill the microbes. Accordingly, in the context of this aspect, an "essential component" of an efflux pump is one which is essential to the *in vivo* survival of the microbe, *i.e.*, the survival in a host.

          In yet another aspect, this invention provides a method for enhancing growth of  
30           an animal by administering an efflux pump inhibitor to the animal, which inhibits an efflux pump expressed in a bacterial strain in the animal, and which inhibits the growth of that bacterial strain. Such a growth enhancing effect may result from the reduced

energy consumption by the bacteria, which increases the food energy available to the animal. This method is appropriate, for example, for use with cattle, swine, and fowl such as chickens and turkeys.

In an additional aspect, the invention provides novel compounds having efflux  
5 pump activity. These compounds have chemical structures as described above.

Other features and advantages of the invention will be apparent from the following description of the preferred embodiments, and from the claims.

## 10 DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

### Identification of Efflux Pump Inhibitors

Initial identification of efflux pump inhibitors having structures as described for the present invention was performed using a screening method as generally described  
15 in Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS, U.S. Appl. No. 08/427,088 and Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS, U.S. Appl. No. 08/898,477, filed July 22, 1997, and in International Patent Application PCT/US96/05469, Trias et al., EFFLUX PUMP INHIBITORS. In particular, the screening method based on inhibition of microbial growth in the presence of a subinhibitory concentration of an antibacterial agent which  
20 is normally effluxed by the test microbe and a concentration of a test compound was used for indentifying some of the active compounds disclosed herein. In this method, inhibition of growth of the microbe is indicative that export of the antibacterial agent is inhibited by the test compound, and that the test compound is therefore an efflux pump inhibitor. The mode of action of the test compound so identified can then be  
25 confirmed as inhibiting active efflux. However, other screening methods for detecting efflux pump inhibitors can also be used, specifically including the additional methods described in the above references.

### Synthesis of Derivatives of Efflux Pump Inhibitors from Screening

30 Exemplary compounds of the present invention were synthesized by methods as described in the Examples below. Those skilled in the art will understand how to synthesize additional compounds within the scope of this invention based on the

described syntheses and/or the knowledge of those skilled in the art of chemical synthesis.

#### Susceptibility Testing

5           Particular exemplary efflux pump inhibitor compounds within the generic descriptions of the compounds of this invention were evaluated for potentiation effect. The *in vitro* microbiological data for antibiotic potentiation is presented in Tables 1-5 below.

10           Potentiation effect is observed by the reduction of the minimum inhibitory concentration of levofloxacin in the presence of the experimental efflux pump inhibitor. The activity of efflux pump inhibitors (EPI) in combination with fluoroquinolones, such as levofloxacin, is assessed by the checkerboard assay (Antimicrobial Combinations. *In* Antibiotics in Laboratory Medicine, Ed. Victor Lorian, M.D., Fourth edition, 1996, pp 333-338) using broth microdilution method performed as  
15           recommended by the NCCLS (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS). 1997. Methods for Dilution of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests for Bacteria That Grow Aerobically - Fourth Edition; Approved Standard. NCCLS Document M7-A4, Vol 17 No.2). The test organism used is *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PAM1001. The compounds of this invention demonstrate pump inhibitory activity  
20           against a broad range of *P. aeruginosa* over-producing singular efflux pumps (MexAB, MexCD, and MexEF) and clinical strains containing multiple efflux pumps, not limited to the Mex classification. The compounds tabulated below are representative of the described invention.

25           In this assay, multiple dilutions of two drugs, namely the EPI and levofloxacin, are being tested, alone and in combination, at concentrations equal to, above and below their respective minimal inhibitory concentrations (MICs). In the case of EPI, most of these compounds are devoid of intrinsic antimicrobial activity and are tested at the maximum concentration of 40 µg/ml. The MIC of levofloxacin against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 is 4 µg/ml.

30           The EPI tested are readily soluble in water and stock solutions are prepared at a final concentration of 2 mg/ml. Stock solutions are further diluted, according to the needs of a particular assay, in Mueller Hinton Broth (MHB). Stock solution can be

stored at -80°C. Quinolones are solubilized according to the instructions of the manufacturers, at a concentration of 1 mg/ml. They are then further diluted in MHB. Stock solution can be stored at -80°C.

5 The checkerboard assay is performed in microtiter plates. Levofloxacin is diluted in the x axis, each column containing a single concentration of levofloxacin. The EPI is diluted in the y axis, each row containing an equal concentration of EPI. The result of these manipulations is that each well of the microtiter plate contains a unique combination of concentrations of the two agents. Each of the EPIs are tested independently.

10 The assay is performed in MHB with a final bacterial inoculum of  $5 \times 10^5$  CFU/ml (from an early-log phase culture). Microtiter plates are incubated during 20 h at 35°C and are read using a microtiterplate reader (Molecular Devices) at 650 nm as well as visual observation using a microtiterplate reading mirror. The MIC is defined as the lowest concentration of quinolone, within the combination, at which the visible  
15 growth of the organism is completely inhibited.

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 1**

<b>Comp</b>	<b>Structure</b>
1	Phenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-3-amide
2	Phenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-8-amide
3	Phenylalanyl-ornithine 2-methylquinoline-8-amide
4	Alanyl-phenylalanyl-arginine 2-naphthylamide
5	D-Alanyl-phenylalanyl-arginine 2-naphthylamide
6	Valyl-phenylalanyl-arginine 2-naphthylamide
7	4-Fluorophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-3-amide
8	4-Fluorophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-8-amide
9	4-Iodophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-3-amide
10	4-Iodophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-8-amide
11	Homophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-3-amide
12	Homophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-8-amide
13	Homophenylalanyl-ornithine quinoline-6-amide
14	Homophenylalanyl-ornithine isoquinoline-5-amide
15	Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylarginine 2-naphthylamide
16	Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
17	Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-(naphthylmethyl)amide
18	Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2,2-diphenylethylamide
19	4-Fluorophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
20	4-Iodophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 4-fluorophenethylamide
21	Tyrosyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
22	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 4-fluorophenethylamide
23	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 4-methylphenethylamide
24	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2,2-diphenylethylamide
25	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl-5-amide
26	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
27	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 3-(4-methylphenyl)propylamide
28	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 3-(4-methoxyphenyl)propylamide
29	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 3-(4-fluorophenyl)propylamide
30	β-(2-Thiazolyl)alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
31	4-(Dimethylaminoethoxy)phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 1**

<b>Comp</b>	<b>Structure</b>
32	4-(O-Methylcarboxyamido)phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
33	β-(1-Naphthyl)alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine benzylamide
34	β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine benzylamide
35	β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 4-hydroxyphenethylamide
36	Leucyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-naphthylamide
37	β-(Cyclohexyl)alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine phenethylamide
38	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithine 2-(cyclohexyl)ethylamide
39	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine 2-naphthylamide
40	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
41	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine quinoline-3-amide
42	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine 5-indanylamide
43	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(2-hydroxyphenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
44	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(3-phenylpropyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
45	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(isoamyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
46	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(2-benzoxazolylmethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
47	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(3-quinolinylmethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
48	β-Alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
49	Acetimidoylglycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide
50	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)lysine 3-phenylpropylamide
51	β-Alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)lysine 3-phenylpropylamide
52	4-Aminobutyryl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)diaminopropionic acid 3-phenylpropylamide
53	4-Aminobutyryl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)diaminopropionic acid quinoline-2-amide
54	Glycyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)diaminobutyric acid 3-phenylpropylamide
55	β-Alanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)diaminobutyric acid 3-phenylpropylamide
56	4-Aminobutyryl-N <sub>α</sub> -(phenethyl)diaminobutyric acid 3-phenylpropylamide

Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 2	
Comp	Structure
1	D-Arginyl-D-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
2	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine 2,2-diphenylethylamide
3	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
4	Ornithyl-phenylalanine 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl-5-amide
5	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl-5-amide
6	Ornithyl-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
7	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
8	Ornithyl-phenylalanine quinoline-8-amide
9	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine quinoline-8-amide
10	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalanine 3-phenylpropylamide
11	D-Ornithyl-D-4-methylphenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
12	D-Ornithyl-D-(N-methyl)phenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
13	D-Lysyl-D-phenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
14	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
15	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
16	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-8-amide
17	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 2,2-diphenylethylamide
18	D-Ornithyl-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
19	Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
20	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
21	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-8-amide
22	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine (2-quinolinylmethyl)amide
23	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine (3-quinolinylmethyl)amide
24	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 1-fluoronaphthyl-2-amide
25	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
26	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 3-phenylpropylamide
27	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 4-methylphenethylamide
28	D-Ornithyl-D-homophenylalanine 4-fluorophenethylamide
29	D-Lysyl-D-homophenylalanine 2-naphthylamide
30	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide
31	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(1-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide
32	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine 4-hydroxyphenethylamide
33	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine iso-amylamide
34	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine 2-hydroxybenzylamide
35	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine phenethylamide
36	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinolinyl)alanine 3,3-dimethylbutylamide

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 2**

Comp	Structure
37	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 4-(t-butyl)phenylamide
38	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 4-methylphenethylamide
39	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 4-ethylbenzylamide
40	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 3-phenylpropylamide
41	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 2,3-trimethylenepyridyl-5-amide
42	D-N <sub>a</sub> -(C-Amidino)arginyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide
43	D-Ornithyl-D-leucine 4-fluorophenethylamide
44	D-Ornithyl-D-leucine 3-phenylpropylamide
45	D-Ornithyl-D-valine 2-naphthylamide
46	D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(t-butyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
47	D-Diaminobutyryl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
48	D-Lysyl-D- $\beta$ -(t-butyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
49	D-Lysyl-D-homophenylalanine quinoline-3-amide
50	D-Lysyl-D-homophenylalanine (1-isoquinolinylmethyl)amide
51	D-Lysyl-D-homophenylalanine (2-quinolinylmethyl)amide
52	D-Lysyl-D-homophenylalanine (3-quinolinylmethyl)amide
53	D-Lysyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine 4-ethylbenzylamide



**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 3**

<b>Comp</b>	<b>Structure</b>
1	D-Ornithyl-N-(benzyl)glycine 2-naphthylamide
2	D-Ornithyl-N-(benzyl)glycine 3-phenylpropylamide
3	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)glycine 2-naphthylamide
4	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)glycine 3-phenylpropylamide
5	Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)glycine 3-phenylpropylamide
6	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenylpropyl)glycine 3-phenylpropylamide
7	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-isopropyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
8	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-isopropyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
9	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-isoamyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
10	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-isoamyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
11	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-benzyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
12	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-benzyl)alanine 3-phenylpropylamide
13	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-benzyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
14	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenethyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
15	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenethyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
16	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenethyl)alanine 3-phenylpropylamide
17	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-cyclohexylmethyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
18	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-cyclohexylmethyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
19	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-cyclohexylmethyl)alanine 3-phenylpropylamide
20	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
21	Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
22	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
23	Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
24	Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine 3-phenylpropylamide
25	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-phenylpropyl)alanine (cyclohexylmethyl)amide
26	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(4-methylphenyl)propyl]alanine 2-naphthylamide
27	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(4-methylphenyl)propyl]alanine quinoline-3-amide
28	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-methoxyphenethyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
29	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-methoxyphenethyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
30	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-methylphenethyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
31	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-methylphenethyl)alanine 1-fluoronaphthyl-2-amide
32	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-methylphenethyl)alanine quinoline-3-amide
33	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-fluorophenylpropyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
34	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-4-fluorophenylpropyl)alanine quinolinyl-3-amide

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 3**

<b>Comp</b>	<b>Structure</b>
<b>35</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-cyclopropylmethyl)alanine 2-naphthylamide
<b>36</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -(N-cyclopropylmethyl)alanine quinolinyl-3-amide
<b>37</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)]alanine 2-naphthylamide
<b>38</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)]alanine quinolinyl-3-amide
<b>39</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(isobutyl)]alanine 2-naphthylamide
<b>40</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(isobutyl)]alanine quinoline-3-amide
<b>41</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(3-ethoxypropyl)]alanine 2-naphthylamide
<b>42</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(ethylthioethyl)]alanine 2-naphthylamide
<b>43</b>	D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -[N-(ethylthioethyl)]alanine quinoline-3-amide

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 4**

Comp	Structure
1	Phenylalanyl-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether
2	Phenylalanyl-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl thioether
3	Homophenylalanyl-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether
4	Homophenylalanyl-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
5	$\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanyl- ornithinyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
6	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether
7	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
8	D-Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
10	Phenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
11	Homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylargininyl 2-naphthyl ether
12	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl ether
13	D-Lysyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl ether
14	Ornithyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylphenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl ether
15	Ornithyl-phenylalaninyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
16	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-benzothiazole thioether
17	O-Benzylseryl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether
18	N-(C-Amidino)homophenylalanyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylargininyl 2-naphthyl ether
19	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-quinolinyl ether
20	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 8-quinolinyl ether
21	D-Lysyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether
22	D-Ornithyl-D-valinyl 2-naphthyl ether
23	D-Ornithyl-D-valinyl 2-quinolinyl ether
24	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl thioether
25	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 3-quinolinyl thioether
26	D-Ornithyl-D-leucinyl 2-naphthyl thioether
27	D-Ornithyl-D-leuciny 2-quinolinyl thioether
28	D-Lysyl-D-phenylalaninyl 3-quinolinyl thioether
29	D-Lysyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl thioether
30	N-Ornithyl-N-benzylaminoethyl 2-naphthyl ether
31	D-Ornithyl-N-benzylaminoethanol 2-naphthyl ether
32	Tyrosyl-N <sub>α</sub> -methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether
33	Homophenylalanyl-N-(3-aminopropyl)aminoethyl 2-naphthyl ether
34	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)aminoethanol 2-naphthyl ether
35	Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)aminoethyl 2-naphthyl ether
36	$\beta$ -(Cyclohexyl)alanine N-(3-aminopropyl)-3-(cyclohexyl)propylamide

**Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 4**

<b>Comp</b>	<b>Structure</b>
37	D-Ornithyl- N-(phenethyl)aminopropyl 2-quinoliny l ether
38	D-Ornithyl- N-(benzyl)aminopropyl 2-quinoliny l ether
39	D-Ornithyl- N-(phenethyl)aminoethyl 3-phenylpropyl thioether
40	D-Ornithine N-(isoamylaminoethyl)phenylpropylamide
41	D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaniny l benzyl thioether
42	Homophenylalanyl- ornithiny l 2-phenethyl thioether
43	Homophenylalanine N-(3-aminopropyl)-3-phenylpropylamide
44	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)aminoethyl benzyl thioether
45	D-Ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)aminoethyl (4-ethylbenzyl) thioether

**Table 1. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)**

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
1	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.06		
2	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.06		
3	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50		
4	4	4	4	4	4	0.06	0.03	0.03		
5	4	4	4	4	4	0.25	0.03	0.03		
6	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.015	0.008		
7	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.06		
8	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25		
9	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.06		
10	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.25	0.125		
11	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.03	0.03		
12	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.125	0.125		
13	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.06		
14	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25		
15	4	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.03	0.015		
16	4	4	4	4	0.50	0.03	0.015	0.015		
17	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.03		
18	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25		
19	4	4	4	4	0.06	0.06	0.03	0.015		
20	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.03		
21	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.125	0.03	0.008		

**Table 1. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)**

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
22	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125		
23	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.25	0.25		
24	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.008		
25	4	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.06	0.06		
26	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125	0.06		
27	4	4	4	1	0.125	0.125	0.125	0.06		
28	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.125		
29	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125	0.125		
30	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.03		
31	4	4	4	2	1	1	0.50	0.25		
32	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.06		
33	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50		
34	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.125		
35	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.125		
36	4	4	2	2	0.125	0.06	0.015	0.015		
37	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.125		
38	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.50		
39	4	2	0.50	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03		
40	4	4	1	0.50	0.25	0.125	0.06	0.125		
41	4	4	4	1	1	0.25	0.25	0.25		
42	4	2	1	0.03	0.015	0.015	0.015	0.015		

Table 1. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)											
Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )											
Compound	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$			
43	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.25	0.25	1		
44	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25		
45	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.50	0.125	0.125		
46	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.125	0.250	0.250		
47	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.25	0.125	0.125		
48	4	4	4	1	1	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25		
49	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.25	0.25		
50	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.125	0.06	0.06	0.06		
51	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125	0.125	0.125		
52	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.125	0.125	0.125		
53	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.06	0.03	0.03		
54	4	2	2	1	0.25	0.25	0.06	0.06	0.06		
55	4	4	2	2	0.50	0.25	0.125	0.125	0.125		
56	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.25	0.06	0.06		

Table 2. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
1	4	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.015	0.015	0.015	
2	4	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.25	
3	4	4	4	4	1	1	0.06	0.03	0.03	
4	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.125	
5	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.125	
6	4	4	4	4	2	2	0.50	0.125	0.125	
7	4	4	4	4	4	4	0.50	0.125	0.125	
8	4	4	4	4	2	2	0.50	0.06	0.06	
9	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	
10	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.25	0.25	
11	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.06	0.03	NA	NA	
12	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.06	0.03	0.03	
13	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.06	0.06	
14	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.03	0.03	
15	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.06	
16	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03	0.03	
17	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.03	0.03	
18	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.125	0.125	
19	4	4	4	4	4	0.50	0.06	0.015	0.015	
20	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03	0.015	0.015	
21	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.03	0.008	0.008	



Table 2. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
22	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.06	0.03		
23	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.50	0.06		
24	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.03	0.03	0.06		
25	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	0.06		
26	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.125	0.06		
27	4	4	4	2	2	2	2	2		
28	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.25	0.125		
29	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.06	0.06	0.06		
30	4	4	4	0.50	0.25	0.03	0.03	0.03		
31	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.03	0.03		
32	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.06		
33	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.06	0.06	0.06		
34	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.06	0.50		
35	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.125	0.06		
36	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.50		
37	4	4	4	4	2	0.008	0.015	0.008		
38	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.125	0.03		
39	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.03	0.25		
40	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.03		
41	4	4	4	2	4	0.015	0.015	0.03		
42	4	2	2	0.50	0.125	0.25	0.25	0.25		

Table 2. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)										
Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
43	4	4	4	4	4	2	2	0.50		
44	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.25		
45	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50		
46	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25		
47	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03		
48	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25		
49	4	4	2	2	0.50	0.06	0.03	0.03		
50	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.03		
51	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.06		
52	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.03		
53	4	4	4	4	4	0.06	0.015	0.06		

Table 3. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)										
Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )										
Compound	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
1	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.06		
2	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125		
3	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.03		
4	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.125	0.125		
5	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.125		
6	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	0.06		
7	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.06		
8	4	4	4	4	4	2	2	0.50		
9	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.06	0.06	0.06		
10	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.03		
11	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.06	0.008	0.008		
12	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.125		
13	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25	0.015		
14	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.03	0.015		
15	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.015	0.015	0.015		
16	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.06		
17	4	4	2	2	0.25	0.06	0.06	0.06		
18	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.03	0.03		
19	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.125		
20	4	4	2	1	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03		
21	4	4	2	1	0.03	0.03	0.06	0.03		

**Table 3. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)**

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
22	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03	0.06		
23	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.06	0.03	0.015		
24	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.125	0.125		
25	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.25		
26	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.015	0.03	NA		
27	4	4	4	1	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.03		
28	4	4	4	2	0.015	0.008	0.015	0.015		
29	4	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.03	0.008		
30	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.015	0.015	0.015		
31	4	4	2	0.125	0.03	0.03	0.06	NA		
32	4	4	2	2	0.125	0.008	0.008	0.015		
33	4	4	2	0.06	0.015	0.015	0.03	NA		
34	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.015	0.03		
35	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.06		
36	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50		
37	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.03	0.03	0.06		
38	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.06	0.015		
39	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.03		
40	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25		
41	4	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.125		
42	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.06	0.015		

Table 3. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)									
Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
Compound	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.	EPI Conc.
43	0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	0.125
	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50		

Table 4. Levofloxacin MIC Against *P. aeruginosa* PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)

Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
1	4	4	4	2	1	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03	
2	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50	0.06	0.06	
3	4	4	4	2	0.015	0.015	0.03	NA	NA	
4	4	4	4	0.25	0.03	0.03	0.06	0.06	0.06	
5	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.06	0.06	0.06	
6	4	4	4	4	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.008	0.008	
7	4	4	4	2	0.03	0.06	0.06	0.03	0.03	
8	4	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.50	
9	4	4	4	4	1	1	0.06	0.125	0.125	
10	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.03	NA	NA	NA	
11	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03	
12	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.03	0.06	0.06	
13	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125	0.125	0.125	
14	4	4	4	4	2	2	2	1	1	
15	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.06	0.06	0.06	
16	4	4	4	4	2	0.015	0.03	0.015	0.015	
17	4	4	4	4	0.50	0.50	NA	NA	NA	
18	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.125	0.25	0.25	
19	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.125	
20	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	0.125	0.125	
21	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.06	0.06	

Table 4. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)										
Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
22	4	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.50		
23	4	4	4	2	1	0.06	0.06	0.06		
24	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.125	0.03		
25	4	4	2	0.25	0.125	0.06	0.125	0.125		
26	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.03		
27	4	4	4	4	2	2	1	1		
28	4	4	4	2	2	0.25	0.125	0.125		
29	4	4	2	0.25	0.06	0.015	0.015	0.015		
30	4	4	2	0.25	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.015		
31	4	4	4	4	0.50	0.125	0.015	0.015		
32	4	4	2	0.25	0.125	0.125	0.06	NA		
33	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.03		
34	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.03		
35	4	4	4	2	0.25	0.25	NA	NA		
36	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.50	NA		
37	4	4	4	4	2	0.06	0.03	0.06		
38	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.03		
39	4	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25		
40	4	4	4	0.50	0.50	0.125	0.125	0.125		
41	4	2	0.25	0.06	0.125	0.06	0.06	NA		
42	4	4	4	4	1	0.50	0.50	0.50		

Table 4. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)										
Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )										
Compound	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/ml}$		
43	4	4	4	4	2	0.50	0.25	0.125		
44	4	4	4	4	1	0.25	0.125	0.06		



## Efflux Pump Inhibitors (EPIs) for Table 5

Comp	Structure
1	Ethyl 2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate Trifluoroacetate
2	Benzyl 2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate Trifluoroacetate
3	Benzyl 2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate Trifluoroacetate
4	2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate
5	2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate
6	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate
7	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(5- <i>tert</i> -butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-valeramide Trifluoroacetate
8	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-valeramide Trifluoroacetate
9	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(5-chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate
10	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate
11	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(1-oxazolo[4,5- <i>b</i> ]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-valeramide Trifluoroacetate
12	(2 <i>R</i> )-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate
13	2-[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[(2 <i>RS</i> , 3 <i>R</i> )-3,6-Diamino-2-hydroxyhexyl]amino]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate
14	(2 <i>RS</i> , 3 <i>R</i> )-3,6-Diamino-1-[[[(1 <i>R</i> )-1-[( <i>RS</i> )-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate

Table 5. Levofloxacin MIC Against <i>P. aeruginosa</i> PAM1001 in Presence of Efflux Pump Inhibitor (EPI)										
Compound	Minimum Inhibitory Concentration ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ )									
	EPI Conc. 0 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 0.625 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 1.25 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 2.5 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 5 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 10 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 20 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	EPI Conc. 40 $\mu\text{g/mL}$		
1	4	4	4	4	4	4	2	1		
2	4	4	4	4	2	0.125	0.015	0.125		
3	4	4	4	2	0.015	0.015	0.015	0.008		
4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4		
5	4	4	4	0.5	0.008	0.008	0.015	0.015		
6	4	4	4	2	1	0.5	0.125	0.06		
7	4	4	0.5	0.015	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03		
8	4	4	2	0.06	0.03	0.015	0.015	0.015		
9	4	4	2	2	0.03	0.015	0.015	0.015		
10	4	4	4	4	2	1	0.25	0.125		
11	4	4	4	4	4	4	2	2		
12	4	4	4	4	1	1	0.125	0.06		
13	4	4	2	2	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.015		
14	4	2	0.5	0.06	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03		

*In vivo* Evaluation of Efflux Pump Inhibitor Compounds

Inhibitors of the bacterial efflux pumps are generally initially characterized *in vitro*. Those which show effective inhibition of the pump(s) and which show synergistic activity with antibiotics are selected for evaluation *in vivo*. Efficacy testing can be done using standard procedures. Primary efficacy evaluation may be done using the murine septicemia model (M.G. Bergeron, 1978, *Scand. J. Infect. Dis. Suppl.* 14:189-206; S.D. Davis, 1975, *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 8:50-53). In this model a supra-lethal dose of bacteria is used to challenge the rodents. Treatment is initiated, varying either or both time(s) of treatment and dose of antibiotic. In these experiments both the antibiotic and the efflux pump inhibitor doses are varied. A positive result is indicated by significant increase in protection from the lethal infection by the combination of the potentiator (the efflux pump inhibitor) and the antibiotic versus the antibiotic alone.

A second efficacy model which is used is the mouse soft tissue infection model (Vogelman *et al.*, 1988, *J. Infect. Dis.* 157:287-298). In this model anesthetized mice are infected with an appropriate titer of bacteria in the muscle of the hind thigh. Mice are either neutropenic (cyclophosphamide treated at 125 mg/kg on days -4, -2, and 0) or immunocompetent. The infecting dose is commonly  $10^5$ - $10^6$  colony forming units per animal. Treatment with the combination of the efflux pump inhibitor and/or antibiotics follows infection, or can occur before infection. The proliferation (or death) of the bacteria within the thigh muscle is monitored over time. Effective combinations show greater activity than the antibiotic alone. Activity is defined as reduction in growth rate of the test bacteria in the murine tissue.

Another model useful for assessing the effectiveness of the efflux pump inhibitors is the diffusion chamber model (Malouin *et al.*, 1990, *Infect. Immun.* 58:1247-1253; Day *et al.*, *J. Infect.* 2:39-51; Kelly *et al.*, 1989, *Infect. Immun.* 57:344-350). In this model rodents have a diffusion chamber surgically placed in their peritoneal cavity. The chamber can consist of a polypropylene cylinder with semipermeable membranes covering the cylinder ends. Diffusion of peritoneal fluid into and out of the chamber provides nutrients for the microbes. The proliferation of the bacteria in the presence and absence of the antibiotic/efflux pump inhibitor is compared to the antibiotic alone. Dose ranging of the combination and the antibiotic

alone are done to assess effectiveness of the antimicrobial and combinations.

A tertiary model useful as a stringent test of the efflux pump inhibitor/antibiotic combination is the endocarditis model (J. Santoro and M.E. Levinson, 1978, *Infect. Immun.* 19:915-918). Either rats or rabbits are effectively  
5 used in this model. The effectiveness of combinations of efflux inhibitor and antibiotic are compared to antibiotic alone. The end point is usually viable cells remaining in the cardiac vegetations at the end of treatment.

The examples of infection models provided are not limiting. As understood by those skilled in the art, other models can be utilized as appropriate for a specific  
10 infecting microbe. In particular, cell-based infection models may be used in some circumstances instead of animal models.

#### Pharmaceutical Compositions and Modes of Administration

The particular compound that is an efflux pump inhibitor can be  
15 administered to a patient either by itself, or in combination with an antimicrobial, e.g., antibacterial, agent, or in pharmaceutical compositions where it is mixed with suitable carriers or excipient(s). A combination of an efflux pump inhibitor with an antimicrobial agent can be of at least two different types. In one, a quantity of an efflux pump inhibitor is combined with a quantity of an antimicrobial agent in a  
20 mixture, e.g., in a solution or powder mixture. In such mixtures, the relative quantities of the inhibitor and the antimicrobial agent may be varied as appropriate for the specific combination and expected treatment. In a second type of combination an inhibitor and an antimicrobial agent can be covalently linked in such manner that the linked molecule can be cleaved within the cell. However, the term  
25 "in combination" can also refer to other possibilities, including serial administration of an inhibitor and another antimicrobial agent. In addition, an efflux pump inhibitor and/or another antimicrobial agent may be administered in pro-drug forms, i.e. the compound is administered in a form which is modified within the cell to produce the functional form. In treating a patient exhibiting a disorder of interest, a  
30 therapeutically effective amount of an agent or agents such as these is administered. A therapeutically effective dose refers to that amount of the compound(s) that results in amelioration of symptoms or a prolongation of survival in a patient, and may include elimination of a microbial infection.

Toxicity and therapeutic efficacy of such compounds can be determined by standard pharmaceutical procedures in cell cultures or experimental animals, *e.g.*, for determining the LD<sub>50</sub> (the dose lethal to 50% of the population) and the ED<sub>50</sub> (the dose therapeutically effective in 50% of the population). The dose ratio between toxic and therapeutic effects is the therapeutic index and it can be expressed as the ratio LD<sub>50</sub>/ED<sub>50</sub>. Compounds which exhibit large therapeutic indices are preferred. The data obtained from these cell culture assays and animal studies can be used in formulating a range of dosage for use in human. The dosage of such compounds lies preferably within a range of circulating concentrations that include the ED<sub>50</sub> with little or no toxicity. The dosage may vary within this range depending upon the dosage form employed and the route of administration utilized. It is preferable that the therapeutic serum concentration of an efflux pump inhibitor should be in the range of 0.1-100 µg/ml., more preferably 0.1-50 µg/ml.; 0.1-20 µg/ml.; 1.0-50 µg/ml.; or 1.0-20 µg/ml.

For any compound used in the method of the invention, the therapeutically effective dose can be estimated initially from cell culture assays. For example, a dose can be formulated in animal models to achieve a circulating plasma concentration range that includes the IC<sub>50</sub> as determined in cell culture. Such information can be used to more accurately determine useful doses in humans. Levels in plasma may be measured, for example, by HPLC.

In particular preferred embodiments, the efflux inhibitor in a pharmaceutical composition has a structure as shown by the generic structures described above.

The exact formulation, route of administration and dosage can be chosen by the individual physician in view of the patient's condition. (See *e.g.* Fingl et al., in THE PHARMACOLOGICAL BASIS OF THERAPEUTICS, 1975, Ch. 1 p.1). It should be noted that the attending physician would know how to and when to terminate, interrupt, or adjust administration due to toxicity, or to organ dysfunctions. Conversely, the attending physician would also know to adjust treatment to higher levels if the clinical response were not adequate (precluding toxicity). The severity of the condition may, for example, be evaluated, in part, by standard prognostic evaluation methods. Further, the dose and perhaps dose frequency, will also vary according to the age, body weight, and response of the individual patient. A program comparable to that discussed above may be used in

veterinary medicine.

Depending on the specific infection being treated, such agents may be formulated and administered systemically or locally. Techniques for formulation and administration may be found in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 18th ed.,

5 Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA (1990). Suitable routes may include oral, rectal, transdermal, vaginal, transmucosal, or intestinal administration; parenteral delivery, including intramuscular, subcutaneous, intramedullary injections, as well as intrathecal, direct intraventricular, intravenous, intraperitoneal, intranasal, or intraocular injections, just to name a few.

10 For injection, the agents of the invention may be formulated in aqueous solutions, preferably in physiologically compatible buffers such as Hanks's solution, Ringer's solution, or physiological saline buffer. For such transmucosal administration, penetrants appropriate to the barrier to be permeated are used in the formulation. Such penetrants are generally known in the art.

15 Use of pharmaceutically acceptable carriers to formulate the compounds herein disclosed for the practice of the invention into dosages suitable for systemic administration is within the scope of the invention. With proper choice of carrier and suitable manufacturing practice, the compositions of the present invention, in particular, those formulated as solutions, may be administered parenterally, such as  
20 by intravenous injection. The compounds can be formulated readily using pharmaceutically acceptable carriers well known in the art, into dosages suitable for oral administration. Such carriers enable the compounds of the invention to be formulated as tablets, pills, capsules, liquids, gels, syrups, slurries, suspensions and the like, for oral ingestion by a patient to be treated.

25 Pharmaceutical compositions suitable for use in the present invention include compositions wherein the active ingredients are contained in an effective amount to achieve its intended purpose. Determination of the effective amounts is well within the capability of those skilled in the art, especially in light of the detailed disclosure provided herein. In addition to the active ingredients, these pharmaceutical  
30 compositions may contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable carriers including excipients and auxiliaries which facilitate processing of the active compounds into preparations which can be used pharmaceutically. The preparations formulated for oral administration may be in the form of tablets, dragees, capsules, or solutions.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention may be manufactured in a manner that is itself known, e.g., by means of conventional mixing, dissolving, granulating, dragee-making, levitating, emulsifying, encapsulating, entrapping or lyophilizing processes.

- 5           Pharmaceutical formulations for parenteral administration include aqueous solutions of the active compounds in water-soluble form. Additionally, suspensions of the active compounds may be prepared as appropriate oily injection suspensions. Suitable lipophilic solvents or vehicles include fatty oils such as sesame oil, or synthetic fatty acid esters, such as ethyl oleate or triglycerides, or liposomes.
- 10   Aqueous injection suspensions may contain substances which increase the viscosity of the suspension, such as sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, sorbitol, or dextran. Optionally, the suspension may also contain suitable stabilizers or agents which increase the solubility of the compounds to allow for the preparation of highly concentrated solutions.
- 15           Pharmaceutical preparations for oral use can be obtained by combining the active compounds with solid excipient, optionally grinding a resulting mixture, and processing the mixture of granules, after adding suitable auxiliaries, if desired, to obtain tablets or dragee cores. Suitable excipients are, in particular, fillers such as sugars, including lactose, sucrose, mannitol, or sorbitol; cellulose preparations such
- 20   as, for example, maize starch, wheat starch, rice starch, potato starch, gelatin, gum tragacanth, methyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl-cellulose, sodium carboxymethylcellulose, and/or polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP). If desired, disintegrating agents may be added, such as the cross-linked polyvinyl pyrrolidone, agar, or alginic acid or a salt thereof such as sodium alginate.
- 25           Dragee cores are provided with suitable coatings. For this purpose, concentrated sugar solutions may be used, which may optionally contain gum arabic, talc, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, carbopol gel, polyethylene glycol, and/or titanium dioxide, lacquer solutions, and suitable organic solvents or solvent mixtures. Dyestuffs or pigments may be added to the tablets or dragee coatings for
- 30   identification or to characterize different combinations of active compound doses.
- Pharmaceutical preparations which can be used orally include push-fit capsules made of gelatin, as well as soft, sealed capsules made of gelatin and a plasticizer, such as glycerol or sorbitol. The push-fit capsules can contain the active

ingredients in admixture with filler such as lactose, binders such as starches, and/or lubricants such as talc or magnesium stearate and, optionally, stabilizers. In soft capsules, the active compounds may be dissolved or suspended in suitable liquids, such as fatty oils, liquid paraffin, or liquid polyethylene glycols. In addition,  
5 stabilizers may be added.

### EXAMPLES

The compounds of the present invention may be readily prepared in accordance with the following synthesis schemes, as illustrated in the specific  
10 examples provided. However, those skilled in the art will recognize that other synthetic pathways for forming the compounds of this invention can be utilized, and that the following is provided merely by way of example, and is not limiting to the present invention. It will be further recognized that various protecting and deprotecting strategies will be employed which are standard in the art (see, *e.g.*,  
15 "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis" by Greene and Wuts). Those skilled in the arts will recognize that the selection of any particular protecting group (*e.g.*, amine and carboxyl protecting groups) will depend on the stability of the protected moiety with regard to the subsequent reaction conditions and will understand the appropriate selections.

20 Further illustrating the knowledge of those skilled in the art is the following sampling of the extensive chemical literature:

- 1) "Chemistry of the Amino Acids" by J.P. Greenstein and M. Winitz, Wiley and Sons, Inc. New York, New York (1961).
- 2) "Comprehensive Organic Transformations" by R. Larock, VCH Publishers (1989).
- 25 3) T.D. Ocain and D.H. Rich, J. Med. Chem., 31, pp. 2193-2199 (1988).
- 4) E.M. Gordon, J.D. Godfrey, N.G. Delaney, M.M. Asaad, D. Von Langen, and D.W. Cushman, J. Med. Chem., 31, pp. 2199-2210 (1988).
- 5) "Practice of Peptide Synthesis" by M. Bodansky and A. Bodanszky, Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y. (1984).
- 30 6) "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis" by T. Greene and P. Wuts (1991).
- 7) "Asymmetric Synthesis: Construction of Chiral Molecules Using Amino Acids" by G.M. Coppola and H.F. Schuster, John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1987).
- 8) "The Chemical Synthesis of Peptides" J. Jones, Oxford University Press, New York,

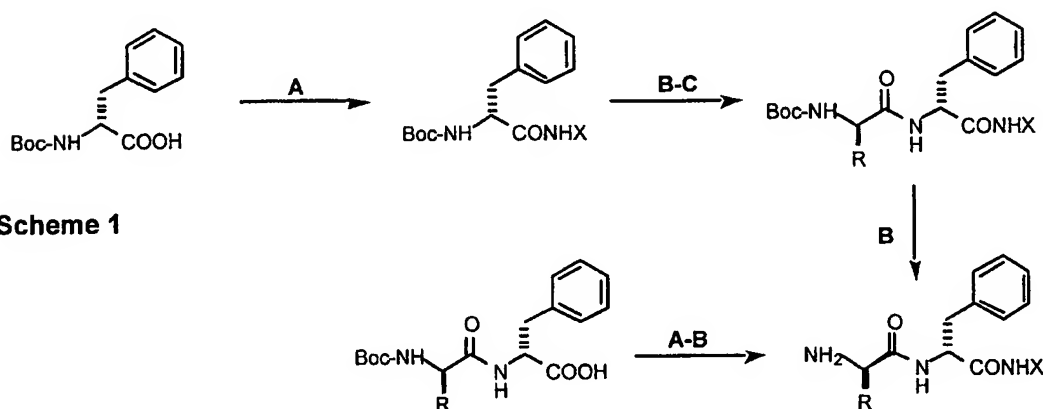


N.Y. (1991).

9) "Introduction of Peptide Chemistry" by P.D. Bailey, John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1992).

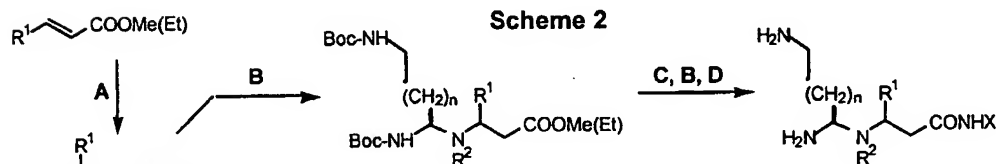
10) "Synthesis of Optically Active  $\alpha$ -Amino Acids" by R.M. Williams, Pergamon Press, Oxford, U.K. (1989).

11) S.Y. Tamura, B.M. Shamblin, T.K. Brunck, and W.C. Ripka, Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, 7, pp. 1359-1364 (1997).



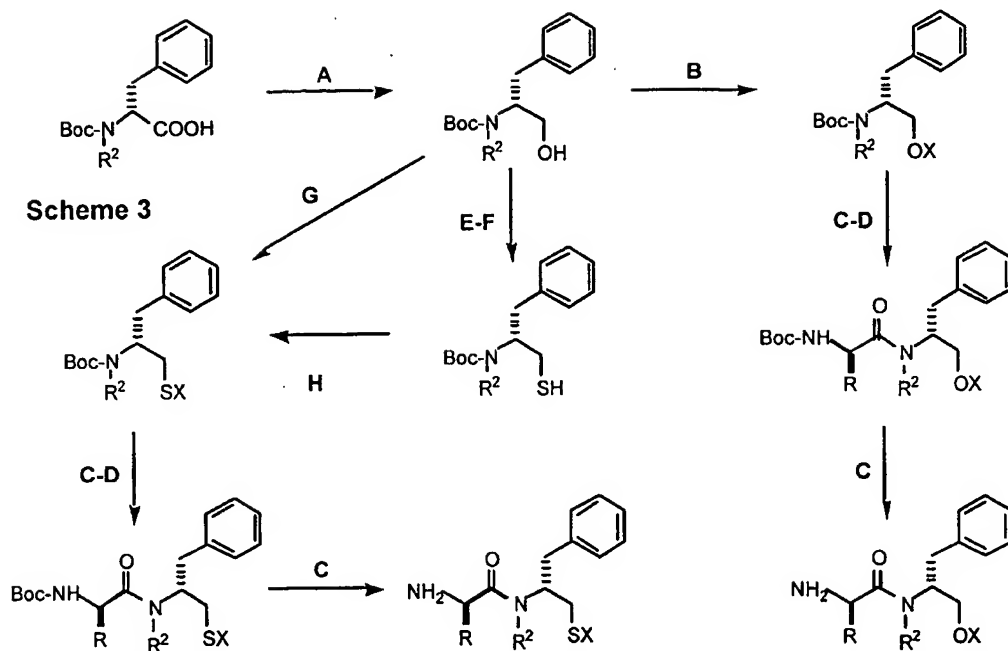
**Scheme 1**

a) amide coupling conditions; b)  $\text{CF}_3\text{COOH}$ ; c) Boc-amino acid, coupling agent



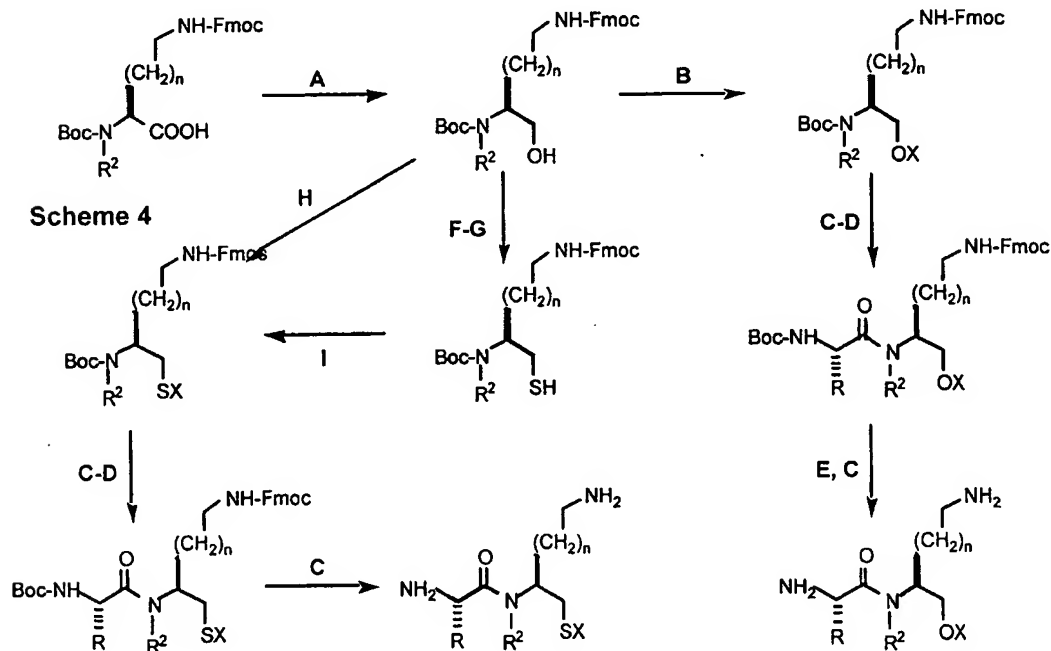
**Scheme 2**

a)  $\text{R}^2\text{NH}_2$ ; b) amide coupling conditions; c) 0.1N NaOH;  $\text{H}^+$ ; d)  $\text{CF}_3\text{COOH}$



a) EtOCOCI, triethylamine;  $\text{NaBH}_4$ ; b)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD, XOH; c)  $\text{CF}_3\text{COOH}$ ; d) Boc-amino acid, coupling agent; e)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COSH}$ ; f)  $\text{CH}_3\text{ONa}$ ; g)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD, XSH; h) activated heterocycles (e.g., chloropyridine, chloroquinolines)

5



a) EtOCOCI, triethylamine;  $\text{NaBH}_4$ ; b)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD, XOH; c)  $\text{CF}_3\text{COOH}$ ; d) Boc-amino acid, coupling agent; e) 20% piperidine; f)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COSH}$ ; g)  $\text{CH}_3\text{ONa}$ ; h)  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P}$ , DEAD, XSH; i) activated heterocycles (e.g., chloropyridine, chloroquinolines)

**General Procedure for Phosphorus Oxychloride-Mediated Peptide Coupling Amidation (Procedure A)**

5 A solution of N-protected amino acid in dichloromethane (0.1 M) at 0°C, under nitrogen atmosphere, is treated with phosphorus oxychloride (1.5 eq) and diisopropylethylamine (2.1 eq) followed by an alkyl (or aryl) amine (1.5 eq). The solution is stirred at 0°C until starting material was consumed, *as per* thin layer chromatography monitoring. The reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate and worked up as usual, with purification by either chromatography or crystallization.

10

**General Procedure for PyBrop-Mediated Peptide Coupling (Procedure B)**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-(alkylamino) component, Boc-amino acid (1.3 eq), diisopropylethylamine (2.0 eq), and dimethylacetamide (6 ml) was treated with benzotriazole-1-yloxytris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBrop) (1 eq) under  
15 nitrogen at room temperature. Reaction mixture is stirred 10-12 hrs, pour into ethyl acetate, and worked up as usual, with purification by either chromatography or crystallization.

**General Procedure for EDAC Mediated Peptide Coupling (Procedure C)**

20 A solution of Boc-amino acid in dichloromethane (0.1 M), N-hydroxybenzotriazole (1 eq), and alkyl (or aryl) amine (1.6 eq) is treated with 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (1.5eq). After stirring at room temperature for 10-12 hrs, the reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate and work up as usual, with purification by chromatography or crystallization.

25

**General Procedure for Coupling of N<sub>α</sub>-Alkyl (or Arylalkyl) Peptides with Mixed Anhydrides (Procedure D)**

A cold (0°C) solution of Boc-amino acid (1 mmol), triethylamine (1.2 mmol), and dichloromethane (4 ml) under nitrogen atmosphere was treated with ethyl chloro-  
30 formate [or pivaloyl chloride] (1.2 mmol). After stirring for 2 hrs at 0°C, a solution of secondary amine (1 mmol) in dichloromethane (3.5 ml) was added and then the reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 12-16 hrs. The reaction was worked up as in Procedure A.

**General Procedure for Deprotection of *tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl (Boc) Peptides (Procedure E)**

The starting material (10 mg) is dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) and stirred 1  
5 hr, and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material is loaded onto a reverse  
phase preparative HPLC. Typical HPLC conditions: 1 cm X 22 cm Amberchrom; 2  
ml /min flow. Solvent condition for one hour elution profiles: A: 0 to 50%  
acetonitrile / (0.1% TFA), B: 0 to 60% acetonitrile / (0.1% TFA); C: 0 to 70%  
acetonitrile / (0.1% TFA). The fractions are concentrated to remove acetonitrile,  
10 then lyophilized.

**General Procedure for Reduction of N-Protected Amino Acids to N-Protected Amino Alcohols (Procedure F)**

A cold solution (0°C) of Boc-amino acid (1 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran  
15 (0.1 M), under nitrogen atmosphere, is treated sequentially with ethyl chloroformate  
(2 eq) and triethylamine (2 eq). The mixture is stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. Sodium  
borohydride (6 eq) is added, followed by very slow addition of water (16 ml) over a  
period of 40 min. Once the addition is completed, the mixture is poured into ethyl  
acetate and worked up with final chromatographic purification.

20

**Example 1 - Alanyl-Phenylalanyl-Arginine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

A solution of Phe-Arg  $\beta$ -naphthylamide dihydrochloride (25 mg), diisopropylethyl-  
amine (8  $\mu$ l), Boc-alanine N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (14 mg), and dimethylacet-  
amide (0.5 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 2 hrs. After concentration *in vacuo*, resultant  
25 *Boc-Ala-Phe-Arg 2-naphthylamide* was deprotected as described in Procedure E.  
Product was obtained as white solid (20 mg), after HPLC (method A, retention time  
= 43.3 min.): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.45 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 3H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.89  
(m, 1H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 3.15 (dd, J=12.9; 8.2 Hz, 1H), 3.24 (dd, J=12.3; 8.2 Hz, 1H),  
3.31 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 2H), 4.15 (q, J=8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.48 (t, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.81 (HOD  
30 with proton hidden), 7.20 (m, 1H), 7.29 (m, 4H), 7.58 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (m,  
2H), and 7.99 (m, 4H).

**Example 2 - D-Alanyl-Phenylalanyl-Arginine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 1. Boc-D-alanine N-hydroxy-succinimide ester was coupled to Phe-Arg- $\beta$ -naphthylamide dihydrochloride; the resultant *Boc-D-Ala-Phe-Arg 2-naphthylamide* was deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid to afford a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.43 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 3H), 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 1.99 (m, 1H), 3.17 (dd, J=12.9; 8.2 Hz, 1H), 3.21 (dd, J=12.3; 8.2 Hz, 1H), 3.29 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 2H), 4.13 (q, J=8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.50 (t, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.81 (HOD with proton hidden), 7.18 (m, 1H), 7.29 (m, 4H), 7.58 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (m, 2H), and 8.01 (m, 4H).

10 **Example 3 - D-Leucyl-Phenylalanyl-Arginine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

Using the procedure similar to that used in Example 1, Boc-D-leucine N-hydroxy-succinimide ester was coupled to Phe-Arg- $\beta$ -naphthylamide dihydrochloride; the resultant *Boc-D-Leu-Phe-Arg 2-naphthylamide* was deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid to afford a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  0.85 (broad s, 6H), 1.29 (m, 1H), 1.52 (m, 2H), 1.77 (m, 2H), 1.98 (m, 2H), 3.07 (m, 1H), 3.29 (m, 3H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 4.54 (m, 1H), 4.81 (HOD with hidden proton), 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.36 (broad s, 4H), 7.58 (d, J=10.0 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (m, 2H), 8.01 (m, 23H), and 8.09 (s, 1H).

**Example 4 - Phenylalanyl-Ornithine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

20 (A) N-Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-ornithine

N-Boc-phenylalanine N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (1.3 g, 3.6 mmol) was dissolved in dimethylformamide (15 mL) and N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-ornithine (0.88 g, 3.8 mmol) was added in one portion. The solution was kept at 70 °C for 1 hr, cooled to 25°C, filtered to clarify and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with water. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated to dryness to afford titled compound (1.02 g) as a white foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.39-1.45 (18H), 1.70-1.72 (1H), 1.89-1.92 (1H), 3.01-3.18 (4H), 4.43 (1H), 4.58 (1H), 4.82 (1H), 5.23 (1H), 7.20-7.32 (5H).

30 (B) N-Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-ornithine Quinoline-3-amide

A cold solution (0°C) of N-Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-ornithine (0.2 g, 0.4 mmol), 3-aminoquinoline (0.082 g, 0.57 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (0.103 mg, 0.8 mmol), 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol), and methylene chloride (3

mL) was treated dropwise with phosphorus oxychloride (0.5 mmol). The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hr and ethyl acetate (20 mL) was added. The organic layer was washed with water (2 x 20 mL), 1N hydrochloric acid (2 x 10 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (2 x 10 mL) and brine. The organic layer was dried over  
5 anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate adsorbed onto 100 mg of silica gel and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The column was eluted with ethyl acetate/hexane (70:30, v:v) to afford titled compound (51 mg) as an oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42-1.55 (18H), 1.6-1.8 (1H), 2.0-2.1 (1H), 3.1-3.2 (4H), 3.3-3.4 (1H), 4.19-4.21 (1H), 4.70-4.80 (1H), 5.0-5.15 (1H), 7.21-7.29 (5H),  
10 7.53-7.55 (1H), 7.63-7.65 (1H), 7.79-7.81 (1H), 8.05-8.07 (1H), 8.74 (1H), 8.94 (1H); mass spectrum (relative intensity) *m/e* 606 (100, M+1).

#### (C) Phenylalanyl-Ornithine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate

A solution of N-Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>ε</sub>-Boc-ornithine quinoline-3-amide (50 mg) and  
15 trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL) was stirred at 25°C for 1 hr. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo*, suspended in water and applied to a MPLC reverse phase column (1 cm x 22 cm, Amberchrom). The column was eluted at a rate of 2 mL/min over 1 hr (gradient of 0 to 60% acetonitrile with 0.1% TFA) and desired fractions lyophilized to afford titled dipeptide amide (46 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ  
20 1.83-2.15 (4H), 3.11-3.15 (2H), 3.27-3.34 (2H), 4.39-4.43 (1H), 4.63-4.67 (1H), 7.17-7.34 (5H), 8.01-8.05 (1H), 8.12-8.16 (2H), 9.03 (1H), 9.37 (1H); mass spectrum (relative intensity) *m/e* 406 (100, M+1).

#### Example 5 - β-N-(Phenethyl)alanine Methyl Ester

25 A mixture of methyl acrylate (2.0 g), phenethylamine (3.1 g), anhydrous methanol (100 ml), and glacial acetic acid (100 mg) was stirred at 25°C for 14 hr, concentrated *in vacuo* and the resultant oil adsorbed onto silica gel (5 g) and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The title compound (2.2 g) was eluted from the column with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:MeOH:NH<sub>4</sub>OH (89:9:2, v:v): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.50-2.53  
30 (2H), 2.79-2.94 (6H), 3.66 (3H), 7.20-7.32 (5H).

#### Example 6 - β-N-(3-Phenylpropyl)alanine Methyl Ester

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials

are methyl acrylate and 3-phenylpropylamine.

**Example 7 -  $\beta$ -N-(p-Tolylethyl)alanine Ethyl Ester**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
5 are ethyl acrylate and p-tolylethylamine.

**Example 8 -  $\beta$ -N-(iso-Butyl)alanine Ethyl Ester**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
are ethyl acrylate and iso-butylamine.

10

**Example 9 -  $\beta$ -N-(Cyclohexylmethyl)alanine Ethyl Ester**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
are ethyl acrylate and cyclohexylmethylamine.

15 **Example 10 -  $\beta$ -N-(4-Fluorophenylpropyl)alanine Methyl Ester**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
are methyl acrylate and 4-fluorophenylpropylamine.

**Example 11 -  $\beta$ -N-(Cyclopropylmethyl)alanine Methyl Ester**

20 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
are methyl acrylate and cyclopropylmethylamine.

**Example 12 -  $\beta$ -N-(3-Ethoxypropyl)alanine Methyl Ester**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 5, except the starting materials  
25 are methyl acrylate and 3-ethoxypropylamine.

**Example 13 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(3-Phenylpropyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 4, in two steps. Initial coupling  
30 of N,N<sub>8</sub>-bis-Boc-D-ornithine and methyl  $\beta$ -N-(3-phenylpropyl)alaninate (Procedure  
B) afforded *N<sub>α</sub>N<sub>γ</sub>-bis-Boc-D-ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(3-phenylpropyl)alanine methyl ester*.  
Subsequent hydrolysis (0.1N sodium hydroxide), coupling with 3-aminoquinoline  
(Procedure A), and deprotection (Procedure E) gave the titled compound.

**Example 14 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(3-Phenylpropyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting  
5 materials were ethyl  $\beta$ -N-(3-phenylpropyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene, and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine,.

**Example 15 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-Butyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting  
10 materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-butyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 16 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-Butyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials  
15 were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-butyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 17 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-Butyl)alanine (3-Phenylpropyl)amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting  
materials were methyl -N-(*iso*-butyl)alaninate, 3-phenylpropylamine, and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\epsilon}$ -bis-  
20 Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 18 - D-Lysyl-N-(Cyclohexylmethyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting  
25 materials were ethyl  $\beta$ -N-(cyclohexylmethyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and  
 $N_{\alpha},N_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 19 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(Cyclohexylmethyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting  
30 materials were ethyl  $\beta$ -N-(cyclohexylmethyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene, and  
 $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine.



**Example 20 - D-Arginyl- $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-Butyl)alanine Quinoline-2-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-butyl)alaninate, 2-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,NN-tri-Boc-D-arginine.

5

**Example 21 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-Butyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were ethyl  $\beta$ -N-(*iso*-butyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

10 **Example 22 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(4-Methylphenethyl)alanine Quinoline-2-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(4-methylphenethyl)alaninate, 2-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

15

**Example 23 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(4-Methylphenethyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(4-methylphenethyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\delta}$ -bis-

20 Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 24 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(Ethylthioethyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(ethylthioethyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

25

**Example 25 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(Ethylthioethyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

30 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(ethylthioethyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine,

**Example 26 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(Ethylthioethyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide****Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(ethylthioethyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 27 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(Cyclopropylmethyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide****Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(cyclopropylmethyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 28 - D-Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(Cyclopropylmethyl)alanine Quinoline-2-amide****Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(cyclopropylmethyl)alaninate, 2-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 29 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(Cyclopropylmethyl)alanine Quinoline-2-amide****Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except the starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(cyclopropylmethyl)alaninate, 2-aminoquinoline, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 30 - D-Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(3,3-Dimethylbutyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide****Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 31 - Ornithyl- $\beta$ -N-(3-Phenylpropyl)alanine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(3-phenylpropyl)alaninate, 2-aminonaphthalene, and N $_{\alpha}$ ,N $_{\epsilon}$ -bis-

Boc-ornithine.

**Example 32 - Lysyl- $\beta$ -N-(3,3-Dimethylbutyl)alanine Quinoline-3-amide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

- 5 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 13, except starting materials were methyl  $\beta$ -N-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)alaninate, 3-aminoquinoline, and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\epsilon}$ -bis-Boc-lysine.

**Example 33 - D-Ornithyl-D-Phenylalanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

10 (A) N-Boc-D-phenylalanine Quinoline-3-amide

- A solution of N-Boc-D-phenylalanine (1.25 g, 4.7 mmol) in ethyl acetate (40 mL) was treated sequentially with 3-aminoquinoline (1.4 g, 9.4 mmol) and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (1.02 g, 4.9 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25°C for 16 hr, filtered and the filtrate washed with 1M hydrochloric acid (2 x 25 mL), saturated  
15 sodium bicarbonate (1 x 25 mL), and brine (1 x 25 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to dryness to afford titled compound (950 mg) as an oil.

(B)  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithyl-D-Phenylalanine Quinoline-3-amide

- 20 A solution of  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithine (253 mg, 0.76 mmol), triethylamine (81 mg, 0.8 mmol), and methylene chloride (10 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 10 min, cooled to 0 °C and treated with ethyl chloroformate (82 mg, 0.76 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2.5 hr. During this time, N-Boc-D-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide (200 mg, 0.51 mmol) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) at 25°C for  
25 45 min. The solution was concentrated to dryness, coevaporated with methylene chloride (3 x 5 mL), redissolved in methylene chloride (10 mL) and neutralized to pH8 with triethyl-amine (2 eq.). This solution was added to the mixed anhydride and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr at which time the reaction was quenched by the addition of sat. sodium bicarbonate (20 mL). The organic layer  
30 was washed with brine (10 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness to afford  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithyl-D-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide as a white solid.

(C) D-Ornithyl-D-Phenylalanine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate

$N_{\alpha}, N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithyl-D-phenylalanine quinoline-3-amide was treated with trifluoro-acetic acid (20 mL) at 25°C; after 1 hr, the reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by reverse-phase chromatography (Amberchrom) to afford titled compound as white solid:

**Example 34 - D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-Quinoliny)alanine (3-Phenylpropyl)amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 33, except the starting materials are Boc-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine,  $N_{\alpha}, N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine, and 3-phenylpropyl-amine.

**Example 35 - D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-Quinoliny)alanine (4-Ethylbenzyl)amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 33, except starting materials are Boc-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine,  $N_{\alpha}, N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine, and 4-ethylbenzylamine.

**Example 36 - D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-Quinoliny)alanine 2,3-Trimethylenepyridyl-5-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 33, except the starting materials are Boc-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine,  $N_{\alpha}, N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine, and 5-amino-2,3-trimethylenepyridine.

**Example 37 - D-Lysyl-D- $\beta$ -(3-Quinoliny)alanine Isobutylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 33, except the starting materials are Boc-D- $\beta$ -(3-quinoliny)alanine,  $N_{\alpha}, N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine, and *i*-butylamine.

**Example 38 - Phenylalanyl-  $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylarginine  $\beta$ -Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

**(A)  $N_{\alpha}$ -Boc- $N_{\delta}$ -Fmoc- $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylornithine**

Compound is prepared using a revised literature procedure (C.-B. Xue and W. F. DeGrado, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 36, 55 (1995), but using Fmoc-Cl instead of Cbz-Cl:  $^1\text{H}$

NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.45 (s, 9H), 1.60-2.15 (m, 4H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 4.50 (m, 2H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.21 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 2H), 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.39 (m, 2H), 7.59 (m, 2H), and 7.78 (d, J=8.9 Hz, 2H).

5 (B) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

This compound is prepared using Procedure A. N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine (80 mg), obtained in (A), and β-naphthylamine were condensed to afford a colorless solid (103 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.53 (s, 9H), 1.85 (m, 2H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 2.94 (s, 3H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 4.25 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 1H), 4.42 (d, 10 2H), 4.82 (s, 1H), 5.00 (s, 1H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.44 (m, 8H), 7.76 (m, 2H), 7.78 (m, 2H), and 8.25 (s, 1H).

(C) Boc-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

This compound is prepared, using Procedure D, from Boc-phenylalanine (49 mg) and N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine-2-naphthylamide (100 mg) to give a glassy solid (125 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.39 (s, 9H), 1.51 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 1.89 (m, 1H), 2.85 (s, 3H), 2.95-3.18 (m, 2H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 2H), 4.83 (m, 1H), 5.05 (m, 1H), 7.25 (m, 5H), 7.30 (m, 4H), 7.32 (m, 4H), 7.43 (m, 4H), 7.60 (m, 1H), and 7.80 (m, 2H).

20

(D) Boc-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-bis-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylarginine β-Naphthylamide

Compound is prepared in two steps by first dissolving Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (100 mg), obtained from (C), in 20% piperidine in dimethylacetamide (5 ml), stirring 20 min. at ambient temperature, 25 concentrating and drying under vacuum. The residue is then dissolved in dimethylformamide (5ml) followed by the addition of N,N'-bis-Boc-1-guanylpurazole (Y. Wu, G.R. Matsueda, M. Bernatowicz, *Synth. Comm.*, **23**, 3055 (1993); 42 mg) and diisopropylethyl-amine (71  $\mu$ l). The reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate, worked up as usual and the desired compound purified by flash 30 chromatography to give titled product (103 mg) as a white solid. The compound appears as a 1:1-mixture of rotamers: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.41-1.90 (m, 31H), 2.67, 2.80 (2s, total 3H), 2.91-3.10 (m, 2H), 3.45 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m), 4.61 (dd,

J=11.4; 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.86 (m, 2H), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.25 (m, 5H), 7.43 (m, 2H), and 7.83 (m, 2H).

(E) Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylarginine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate

- 5 Boc-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-bis-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylarginine β-naphthylamide was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E), followed by HPLC purification (Method A) to afford a white solid (45 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.70 (m, 2H), 1.92 (m, 1H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.42 (m, 4H), 4.83 (HOD with proton hidden), 5.19 (m, 1H), 7.18 (m, 2H), 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.68 (m, 4H), 8.15 (m, 4H), and 8.20 (s, 1H).

10

**Example 39 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

- A solution of Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>ε</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (60 mg), in 20% piperidine in dimethylacetamide (5 ml), was stirred for 20 min. at 25°C, concentrated and dried under vacuum. Crude Boc-phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine  
15 β-naphthylamide is then deprotected, *as per* Procedure E, to give a white solid which was purified by HPLC (method A): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 3.11 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 2H), 3.21 (dd, J=13.2, 8.8 Hz, 1H), 3.38 (dd, J=13.2; 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.89 (HOD with proton hidden), 5.22 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.15 (m, 3H), 7.28 (m, 2H), 7.68 (m, 3H), 8.04 (m, 3H), and 8.13 (s, 1H).

20

**Example 40 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine (2-Naphthyl)methylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>ε</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine (2-Naphthyl)methylamide

- This compound is prepared using Procedure A; from N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>ε</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methyl-  
25 ornithine and (-naphthyl)methylamine to afford a colorless solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.56 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.28 (m, 2H), 4.21 (m, 1H), 4.39 (m, 2H), 4.51 (m, 1H), 4.69 (m, 3H), 7.40 (m, 5H), 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.58 (d, J=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.68 (s, 1H), and 7.81 (m, 5H).

- 30 (B) Boc-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>ε</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine (2-Naphthyl)methylamide

This compound is prepared in two steps. N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>ε</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine (2-naphthyl)methylamide (80 mg), obtained from (A), is deprotected with

trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml), concentrated and coevaporated thrice with toluene. The crude residue is then neutralized with triethylamine in dichloromethane and coupled to Boc-phenyl-alanine, using Procedure D, to give title compound (24 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.50 (s, 9H), 1.79 (m, 2H), 2.03 (m, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.23 (m, 4H), 4.18 (m, 3H), 4.39 (m, 2H), 4.59 (dd, J=13.3; 6.1 Hz, 1H), 4.64 (dd, J=13.0; 5.5 Hz, 1H), 7.23 (m, 8H), 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.57 (m, 2H), 7.66 9s, 1H), and 7.80 (m, 7H).

(C) Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine (2-Naphthyl)methylamide Trifluoroacetate  
A solution of Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine (2-naphthyl)methylamide (24 mg) and 20% piperidine in dimethylacetamide (1.5 ml) was stirred for 20 min. at 25°C, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue is further deprotected, *as per* Procedure E, to give desired product (14 mg) as a white solid, HPLC (method A): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.12 (m, 4H), 4.57 (d, J=13.2 Hz, 1H), 4.75 (d, J=13.1 Hz, 1H), 4.80 (HOD with proton hidden), 5.09 (t, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.08 (m, 2H), 7.24 (m, 3H), 7.59 (m, 4H), and 7.98 (m, 3H).

#### Example 41 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2,2-Diphenylethylamide

##### 20 Trifluoroacetate

(A) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2,2-Diphenylethylamide

Using Procedure A, N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine and 2,2-diphenylethylamine afforded a colorless solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (s, 10H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 2.50 (s, 3H), 3.19 (m, 2H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 4.00 (m, 1H), 4.19 (t, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.40 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 2H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 7.20-7.34 (m, 12H), 7.41 (t, J=6.6 Hz, 2H), 7.60 (d, J=8.0 Hz, 2H), and 7.79 (d, J=8.5 Hz, 2H).

(B) Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2,2-Diphenylethylamide Trifluoroacetate.

30 N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2,2-diphenylethylamide (A) was converted in two steps (similar to that exemplified in Example 4) to a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.51 (m, 2H), 1.72 (m, 1H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.72 (s, 3H), 2.91 (m,

2H), 3.12 (t, J=6.1 Hz, 2H), 3.94 (dd, J=12.8, 9.1 Hz, 1H), 4.09 (dd, J=12.8, 9.0 Hz, 1H), 4.41 (t, J=7.9 Hz, 1H), 4.68 (t, J=9.6 Hz, 1H), 4.95 (t, J=9.1 Hz, 1H), and 7.22-7.53 (m, 15H).

5 **Example 42 - 4-Fluorophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-4-Fluorophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

Using Procedure D, Boc-4-fluorophenylalanine (138 mg) and N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (120 mg) afforded the titled compound (184 mg) as a  
10 glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.41 (s, 18H), 1.62 (m, 2H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 2.02 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.92-3.20 (m, 4H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 4.82 (m, 1H), 6.70 (m, 1H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3H), 7.79 (m, 3H), and 8.20 (s, 1H).

(B) 4-Fluorophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate

15 Deprotection of Boc-4-fluorophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (174 mg) with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E) afforded titled compound as a white solid (161 mg): HPLC (method A, retention time = 42.27 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.76 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 3.13 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 2H), 3.21 (dd, J=9.2; 13.6 Hz, 1H), 3.37 (dd, J=4.8; 13.2 Hz, 1H),  
20 4.88 (t, J=9.6 Hz, 1H), 5.23 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 6.81 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.63 (m, 3H), 8.04 (m, 3H), and 8.14 (s, 1H).

**Example 43 - Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-Tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

25 Boc-tyrosine (400 mg) and N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (454 mg) were coupled (Procedure B) to afford titled compound (447 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.50 (m, 21H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.73 (s, 3H), 2.76 (m, 2H), 2.99 (dd, J=10.8; 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.09 (dd, J=12.8; 13.2 Hz, 1H), 4.70 (m, 1H), 4.87 (m, 1H), 6.89 (d, J=8.0 Hz, 2H), 7.09 (d, J=8.0 Hz, 2H), 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.75 (m, 4H),  
30 and 8.26 (s, 1H).

(B) Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate



Using Procedure E, Boc-tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (A) (43 mg) afforded the desired compound as a white solid (36 mg): HPLC (method A, retention time = 38.81 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.78 (m, 2H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 3.13 (m, 3H), 3.31 (dd, J=14.0; 5.6 Hz, 1H), 4.81 (HOD with proton hidden), 5.23 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 6.58 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.18 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.59 (dd, J=9.2; 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (m, 2H), 8.03 (m, 2H), 8.08 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 1H), and 8.12 (d, J=1.6 Hz, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 435 (M+1).

**Example 44 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide**

**10 Trifluoroacetate**

(A) N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide  
N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine and 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide were coupled, *as per* Procedure C, to afford titled compound as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (s, 9H), 1.73 (m, 1H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.79 (m, 1H), 2.78 (t, J=7.9 Hz, 2H), 3.02 (m, 1H), 3.14 (m, 2H), 3.52 (m, 4H), 6.96 (m, 2H), 7.11 (m, 5H), and 7.28 (m, 2H).

(B) N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide

Hydrogen gas was bubbled through a solution of N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl- N<sub>α</sub>-methyl-ornithine 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide (A) (180 mg) in methanol (10 ml) in the presence 10% palladium-on-charcoal (20 mg). After starting material had disappeared, *as per* thin-layer chromatography monitoring, the reaction mixture was filtered through a 0.45 μm nylon pad and concentrated. The product is used as is in the subsequent step: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (m, 11H), 1.50 (m, 2H), 2.28 (s, 3H), 2.80 (t, J=7.5 Hz, 2H), 2.94 (t, J=6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 3.53 (q, J=8.1 Hz, 2H), 6.98 (t, J=9.7 Hz, 2H), and 7.18 (dd, J=9.7; 8.5 Hz, 2H).

(C) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide

Using Procedure D, Boc-homophenylalanine (143 mg) and N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methyl-ornithine 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide (B) (crude product) gave desired compound (195 mg) as a glassy solid which was purified by flash chromatography: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (2s, 18H), 1.71 (m, 2H), 1.82 (m, 4H), 2.62-2.80 (m, 7H),

3.12 (m, 2H), 3.45 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 4.92 (m, 1H), 6.89 (m, 2H), 7.13 (m, 2H), 7.20 (m, 3H), and 7.32 (m, 2H).

(D) Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine (4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide Trifluoroacetate

- 5 Titled compound is obtained from Boc-homophenylalanyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide (Procedure E): HPLC (method A);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.59 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.15 (m, 2), 2.78 (s, 3H), 2.83 (m, 2H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.58 (m, 2H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.95 (m, 1H), 7.12 (m, 2H), 7.23 (m, 2H), 7.38 (m, 3H), and 7.51 (m, 2H).

10

**Example 45- 4-Iodophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine (4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-4-Iodophenylalanyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)-ethylamide

- 15 Boc-4-iodophenylalanine and  $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide were coupled by Procedure D:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.38-1.51 (m, 20 H), 1.82 (m, 1H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 2.80-2.97 (m, 4H), 3.00-3.17 (m, 2H), 3.28-3.44 (m, 2H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 4.97 (m, 1H), 6.94-6.99 (m, 4H), 7.11 (m, 1H), 7.18 (m, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H), and 7.63 (dd, 1H).

20

(B) 4-Iodophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Fluorophenyl)ethylamide TFA  
Boc-4-iodophenylalanyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethylamide was deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E) to afford a white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.50 (m, 1H), 1.60 (m, 1H), 1.71 (m, 1H), 1.83 (m, 1H),  
25 2.73 (s, 2H), 2.92 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 3H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 3.59 (m, 2H), 4.74 (m, 1H), 4.91 (m, 1H), 7.04 (d,  $J=8.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.11 (t,  $J=10.9$  Hz, 2H), 7.35 (m, 2H), and 7.79 (d,  $J=8.5$  Hz, 2H).

**Example 46- Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Methylphenyl)ethylamide**

30 **Trifluoroacetate**

(A)  $N_\alpha$ -Benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Methylphenyl)ethylamide  
 $N_\alpha$ -Benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine (200 mg) and 2-(4-

methylphenyl)ethylamine were coupled to afford the titled compound (108 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.45 (s, 9H), 1.58 (m, 1H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.81 (t,  $J=5.8$  Hz, 2H), 3.02 (m, 1H), 3.15 (m, 2H), 3.58 (m, 4H), 7.09 (m, 6H), and 7.27 (m, 3H).

5

(B)  $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Methylphenyl)ethylamide

Catalytic reduction of  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -benzyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-methylphenyl)-ethylamide afforded the titled compound:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (s, 9H), 1.51 (m, 3H), 1.64 (m, 1H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.80 (t,  $J=8.6$  Hz, 1H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 3.52 (m, 2H), 4.68 (m, 1H), and 7.12 (m, 4H).

10

(C) Boc-Homophenylalanyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Methylphenyl)ethylamide

Using Procedure D, Boc-homophenylalanine (143 mg) and  $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-methylphenyl)ethylamide (crude product from B) afforded titled product (195 mg) as a glassy solid after silica gel chromatography:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.44 (2s, 18H), 1.63 (m, 2H), 1.83 (m, 2H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.63-2.79 (m, 7H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.45 (m, 2H), 4.51 (m, 1H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 7.09 (m, 4H), 7.22 (m, 3H), and 7.31 (m, 2H).

20

(D) Homophenylalanyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Methylphenyl)ethylamide TFA

Titled product (D) is obtained from Boc-homophenylalanyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine 2-(4-methylphenyl)ethylamide, by Procedure E, as a white solid: HPLC (method A);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.61 (m, 2H), 1.72 (m, 1H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 2H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 2.81 (m, 4H), 3.08 (m, 2H), 3.58 (m, 2H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 7.18 (m, 4H), 7.40 (m, 3H), and 7.49 (m, 2H).

25

**Example 47 - Homophenylalanyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2,2-Diphenylethylamide Trifluoroacetate**

Titled compound was prepared similarly as in Example 41, except the appropriate

30 homophenylalanine precursor was used. From  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -

methylornithine 2,2-diphenylethylamide (71 mg), there was obtained the desired compound (57 mg) as a white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.62 (m, 2H), 1.72

(m, 1H), 1.89 (m, 1H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 2.06 (m, 1H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.79 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 3.03 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 2H), 3.84 (dd, J=13.2; 8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.15 (dd, J=14.0; 9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.30 (t, J=8.8 Hz, 1H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.97 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), and 7.52 (m, 15H).

5

**Example 48 -  $\beta$ -(2-Thiazolyl)alanyl-  $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylornithine  $\beta$ -aphthylamide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc- $\beta$ -(2-Thiazolyl)alanyl- $N_{\delta}$ -Boc-  $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylornithine  $\beta$ -Naphthylamide

Boc- $\beta$ -(2-thiazolyl)alanine and  $N_{\delta}$ -Boc-  $N_{\alpha}$ -methylornithine  $\beta$ -naphthylamide were

10 coupled under the conditions described in Procedure B, afforded a glassy solid which was purified by silica gel chromatography (1 to 2% MeOH /CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.45 (s, 9H), 1.50 (s, 9H), 1.52 (m, 2H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 3.01 (s, 3H), 3.19 (m, 3H), 3.49 (m, 1H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 5.36 (m, 1H), 7.12 (s, 1H), 7.43 (m, 2H), 7.59 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (m, 3H), 8.28 (s, 1H), and  
15 8.58 (s, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 626 (M+1).

(B)  $\beta$ -(2-Thiazolyl)alanyl-  $N_{\alpha}$ -methylornithine  $\beta$ -aphthylamide Trifluoroacetate

Deprotection of Boc- $\beta$ -(2-thiazolyl)alanyl- $N_{\delta}$ -Boc-  $N_{\alpha}$ -methylornithine  $\beta$ -naphthylamide (A), by Procedure E, afforded a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.80

20 (m, 2H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 2.19 (m, 1H), 3.07 (s, 3H), 3.18 (m, 2H), 3.52 (dd, J=13.0; 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.67 (dd, J=13.0; 3.5 Hz, 1H), 5.02 (m, 1H), 5.29 (t, J=7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.48 (s, 1H), 7.65 (m, 3H), 8.03 (m, 3H), 8.17 (s, 1H), and 8.88 (s, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 426 (M+1).

25 **Example 49 - 4-(O-Dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosyl-  $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylornithine  $\beta$ -Naphthylamide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-4-(O-Dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosine

A mixture of Boc-tyrosine, sodium hydride (4 eq), N,N-dimethylaminoethyl chloride hydrochloride (1.5 eq), and dimethylformamide (0.1 M) was stirred at 0°C for 1 hr.

30 The reaction mixture was then maintained at 25°C (4h), quenched with water, concentrated *in vacuo* and further purified by reverse phase chromatography to give titled compound as a sticky solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.39 (s, 9H), 2.75 (dd, J=17.1; 12.5 Hz, 1H), 2.89 (s, 6H), 3.08 (dd, J=12.5; 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (m, 2H),

4.19 (m, 1H), 4.28 (m, 2H), 6.88 (d, J=9.9 Hz, 2H), and 7.15 (d, J=9.0 Hz, 2H).

(B) Boc-4-(O-Dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

- 5 Using Procedure B, Boc-4-(O-Dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosine (31 mg) and N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (43 mg) were condensed to afford a glassy solid (26 mg) after chromatography: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42-1.57 (m, 21H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.79 (m, 4H), 2.95 (m, 2H), 3.02 (s, 6H), 3.10 (m, 1H), 3.61 (m, 2H), 4.33 (m, 3H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 6.90 (d, J=8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.18 (d, J=8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.41 (m, 10 3H), 7.74 (m, 3H), and 8.11 (s, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 706 (M+1).

(C) 4-(O-Dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide  
Trifluoroacetate

- 15 Titled product was obtained from Boc-4-(O-dimethylaminoethyl)tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide after exposure to trifluoroacetic acid: HPLC (method A, retention time = 35.36 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.80 (m, 3H), 2.07 (m, 1H), 2.69 (s, 9H), 2.81 (m, 2H), 3.01-3.29 (m, 3H), 3.42 (dd, J=11.8; 4.1 Hz, 1H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 4.81 (HOD with 3H hidden), 5.27 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 1H), 6.58 (d, J=9.9 Hz, 2H), 7.26 (d, J=9.9 Hz, 2H), 7.67 (m, 3H), 8.08 (m, 3H), and 8.21 (s, 1H);  
20 mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 507 (M+1).

**Example 50 - 4-(O-Methylcarboxyamido)tyrosyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine β-Naphthylamide  
Trifluoroacetate**

- 25 (A) Boc-4-(O-Methylcarboxyamido)tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-Naphthylamide

A mixture of Boc-tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine β-naphthylamide (43 mg), tetrabutylammonium bromide (5.8 mg), iodoacetamide (14 mg), potassium carbonate (45 mg), and dimethylformamide (0.7 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 10 hrs. The mixture was then poured into ethyl acetate and worked up to give titled product  
30 (47.6 mg) which is used crude: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 18H), 1.82 (m, 4H), 2.79 (s, 3H), 2.82-3.18 (m, 4H), 4.09 (m, 1H), 4.50 (m, 2H), 4.83 (m, 1H), 6.97 (d, J=9.8 Hz, 2H), 7.21 (d, J=9.8 Hz, 2H), 7.43 (m, 3H), 7.79 (m, 3H), and 8.03

(s, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$  714 (M+23).

(B) 4-(O-Methylcarboxyamido)tyrosyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine  $\beta$ -Naphthylamide TFA

Treatment of Boc-4-(O-methylcarboxyamido)tyrosyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine

- 5  $\beta$ -naphthylamide with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E) afforded titled product as a white solid; HPLC (method A, retention time = 37.34 min) ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.79 (m, 3H), 2.06 (m, 1H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 3.12 (m, 3H), 3.41 (dd,  $J=13.2$ ; 4.4 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (dd,  $J=14.8$ ; 2.8 Hz, 1H), 3.83 (d,  $J=14.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.93 (m, 1H), 5.22 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 1H), 6.61 (d,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.28 (d,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.55 (d,  $J=9.2$  Hz, 1H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.97 (d,  $J=8.4$  Hz, 1H), 8.01 (d,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 1H), and 8.06 (m, 2H); mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$  492 (M+1).
- 10

**Example 51 -  $\beta$ -(1-Naphthyl)alanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A)  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine Benzylamide

- 15 This compound is prepared using Procedure C.  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine (100 mg) was coupled with benzylamine to afford titled compound (50 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.42 (s, 9H), 1.52 (m, 2H), 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 3.26 (m, 2H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.41 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 2H), 7.31 (m, 7H), 7.43 (m, 2H), 7.63 (m, 2H), and 7.81 (m, 2H).

20

(B) Boc- $\beta$ -(1-Naphthyl)alanyl- $N_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine Benzylamide

This compound is prepared in two steps.  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine benzylamide (A) (115 mg) is deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml),

- concentrated and coevaporated thrice with toluene. The residue is coupled with Boc- $\beta$ -(1-naphthyl)-alanine (87 mg), using Procedure D, to give the titled product (45 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.42 (s, 9H), 1.56 (m, 2H), 1.62 (m, 2H), 2.59 (s, 3H), 3.18 (m, 2H), 3.40 (dt, 1H), 3.59 (dd, 1H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.21 (m, 1H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.44 (d, 2H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 12H), 7.60 (m, 4H), and 7.79 (m, 4H).
- 25

30 (C)  $\beta$ -(1-Naphthyl)alanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate

Boc- $\beta$ -(1-Naphthyl)alanyl- $N_\delta$ -Fmoc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine benzylamide (B) (28 mg) was deprotected in two steps - i) 20% piperidine in dimethylformamide and ii)

trifluoroacetic acid exposure to afford a white solid: HPLC (method A); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.59 (m, 2H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 1.89 (m, 1H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 3.03 (t, 2H), 3.60 (dd, 1H), 3.82 (dd, 1H), 4.39 (d, 2H), 4.92 (t, 1H), 5.01 (dd, 1H), 7.36-7.50 (m, 12H), 7.75 (m, 2H), 7.99 (t, 1H), 8.10 (d, 1H), and 8.18 (d, 1H).

5

**Example 52 - β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared from N<sub>δ</sub>-Fmoc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine benzylamide and Boc-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine, similar to the procedure in Example 51: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.60 (m, 2H), 1.79 (m, 1H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.03 (t, 2H), 3.37 (dd, 1H), 3.46 (dd, 1H), 4.22 (s, 2H), 4.97 (m, 2H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 7.43 (m, 3H), 7.66 (m, 2H), 7.85 (s, 1H), 7.97 (d, 2H), and 8.02 (m, 2H).

10

**Example 53 - β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethyl-amide Trifluoroacetate**

15

**(A) N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide**

This compound is prepared using Procedure C by coupling of N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine and (4-hydroxyphenyl)ethylamine.

**(B) N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide**

20

Hydrogen gas was bubbled through a solution of N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide (A) (540 mg) in ethanol (20 ml) in the presence of 1 eq. of conc. hydrochloric acid (1.30 ml) and 5% palladium-on-charcoal (50 mg). After disappearance of starting material, as determined by thin-layer chromatography, the reaction mixture is filtered through a 0.45 μm nylon pad and concentrated *in vacuo*.

25

**(C) Boc-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide**

30

Using Procedure B, coupling of Boc-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide, followed by silica gel chromatography (2.5% MeOH / CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.41 (m, 21H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.20 (m, 2H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 2.67 (m, 4H), 3.03 (m, 4H), 4.91 (m, 2H), 6.77 (m, 2H),

6.87 (d,  $J=8.7$  Hz, 1H), 6.98 (d,  $J=10.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.34 (m, 1H), 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.66 (m, 1H), and 7.78 (m, 3H); mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$  663 (M+1).

(D)  $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanyl-  $N_{\alpha}$ -Methylornithine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide TFA  
5 Boc- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanyl- $N_{\delta}$ -Boc-  $N_{\alpha}$ -methylornithine 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl-  
amide (C) was transformed, by Procedure E, to a white product; HPLC (method C);  
 $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.62 (m, 3H), 1.86 (m, 1H), 2.63 (t,  $J=7.6$  Hz, 2H),  
2.79 (s, 3H), 2.91 (m, 2H), 3.21 (m, 2H), 4.71 (t,  $J=6.0$  Hz, 1H), 4.94 (t,  $J=6.5$  Hz,  
1H), 6.69 (d,  $J=9.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.02 (d,  $J=9.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.39 (d,  $J=10.5$  Hz, 1H), 7.48  
10 (m, 2H), 7.78 (s, 1H), and 7.84 (m, 3H); mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$  463 (M+1).

**Example 54 - D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-D- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide

A mixture of Boc-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine (305 mg), benzylamine (165  $\mu\text{l}$ ), and  
15 ethyl acetate (10 ml) was treated with a solution of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (212  
mg) in ethyl acetate (5 ml). The mixture was stirred 3h at 25°C and filtered. The  
mother liquor was diluted with ethyl acetate and worked up as usual. The crude  
residue is used in the subsequent step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.38 (s, 9H),  
3.01 (dd, 1H), 3.34 (dd, 1H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.38 (t, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 7.00 (m, 2H),  
20 7.19 (m, 2H), 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.66 (d, 1H), and 7.81 (m, 3H).

(B)  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide

Boc-D-(2-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide (A) (275 mg) is treated with trifluoroacetic  
acid (5 ml), concentrated and coevaporated thrice with toluene. The crude D-(2-  
25 naphthyl)alanine benzylamide,  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-ornithine (225 mg),  
diisopropylethylamine (121  $\mu\text{l}$ ), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)carbodiimide  
(135 mg), and methylene chloride (5 ml) was stirred for 3 hr at 25°C. The reaction  
mixture is then poured into ethyl acetate and worked up as usual; the crude product  
is used in the subsequent step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.42 (s, 18H), 1.77 (m,  
30 2H), 1.98 (m, 2H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 3.08 (m, 1H), 3.26 (dd, 1H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 4.04 (m,  
1H), 4.37 (m, 2H), 4.79 (q, 1H), 7.03 (m, 2H), 7.18 (m, 3H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.49 (m,  
2H), 7.63 (s, 1H), and 7.79 (m, 3H).



(C) D-Ornithyl-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate

Treatment of N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>ε</sub>-Boc-D-ornithyl-D-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide (B) with trifluoroacetic acid afforded the desired product as a white solid: HPLC (method A, retention time = 40.43 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.80 (m, 2H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 3.06 (m, 2H), 3.23 (dd, 1H), 3.42 (dd, 1H), 4.06 (d, 1H), 4.17 (t, 1H), 4.39 (dd, 1H), 4.81 (HOD with proton hidden), 6.70 (d, 2H), 6.99 (t, 2H), 7.18 (t, 1H), 7.47 (d, 1H), 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.70 (s, 1H), 7.93 (m, 2H), and 8.02 (m, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 419 (M+1).

10 **Example 55 - D-Ornithyl-D-β-(1-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-D-β-(1-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide

This compound is prepared by coupling of Boc-D-β-(1-naphthyl)alanine and benzylamine by Procedure C: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 3.46-3.61 (m, 2H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 4.26 (dd, 1H), 4.50 (q, 1H), 7.21 (m, 3H), 7.36 (m, 3H), 7.49 (m, 1H), 7.58 (t, 1H), 7.78 (m, 1H), 7.85 (t, 1H), and 8.20 (d, 1H).

(B) N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>ε</sub>-Boc-D-Ornithyl-D-β-(1-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide

This compound is prepared by coupling D-β-(1-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide and N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>ε</sub>-Boc-D-ornithine, in the presence of diisopropylethylamine and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide, in methylene chloride: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.43 (m, 11H), 1.64 (m, 2H), 3.02 (m, 1H), 3.11 (m, 1H), 4.06 (m, 2H), 4.22 (dd, 1H), 4.33 (dd, 1H), 4.79 (q, 1H), 7.00 (m, 2H), 7.22 (m, 3H), 7.36 (m, 2H), 7.61 (t, 1H), 7.68 (t, 1H), 7.77 (d, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H), and 8.21 (d, 1H).

25 (C) D-Ornithyl-D-β-(1-Naphthyl)alanine Benzylamide Trifluoroacetate

The titled product was obtained from N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>ε</sub>-Boc-D-ornithyl-D-β-(1-naphthyl)alanine benzylamide (B) by Procedure E; HPLC (method A, retention time = 37.15 min.); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.83 (m, 2H), 2.05 (m, 2H), 3.10 (m, 2H), 3.56 (dd, 1H), 3.73 (dd, 1H), 4.02 (d, 1H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.45 (t, 1H), 7.48 (t, 1H), 7.68 (m, 2H), 7.87 (d, 1H), 8.08 (d, 1H), 8.14 (t, 1H), and 8.19 (d, 1H).

**Example 56 - D-Ornithyl-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide****Trifluoroacetate****(A) Boc-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide**

- This compound is prepared, by Procedure C, by coupling of Boc-D-β-(2-naphthyl)-  
5 alanine with 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethylamine: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.36 (s, 9H), 2.57 (m, 2H), 2.97 (dd, J=13.8; 11.6 Hz, 1H), 3.18-3.40 (m, 3H), 4.32 (m, 1H), 6.67 (d, J=11.4 Hz, 2H), 6.91 (d, J=10.1 Hz, 2H), 7.34 (d, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.66 (s, 1H), and 7.79 (m, 3H).

- 10 (B) N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-D-Ornithyl-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide

- The titled compound is prepared by coupling D-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)ethylamide and N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-D-ornithine by Procedure C: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400  
15 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.36 (s, 9H), 1.47 (broad s, 12H), 1.59 (m, 1H), 2.57 (m, 2H), 2.97 (m, 2H), 3.25 (m, 2H), 3.36 (m, 2H), 4.00 (m, 1H), 4.72 (m, 1H), 6.70 (d, J=10 Hz, 2H), 6.79 (d, J=10 Hz, 2H), 7.30 (d, J=11 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (m, 2H), 7.62 (s, 1H), and 7.74 (m, 3H); mass spectrum (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/e* 647 (M+1).

**(C) D-Ornithyl-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide TFA**

- 20 The titled product was obtained from N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-D-ornithyl-D-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethylamide, by the Procedure E, as a white solid: HPLC (method C); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.79 (m, 2H), 1.98 (m, 2H), 2.34 (m, 1H), 2.42 (m, 1H), 3.05 (m, 2H), 3.18 (dd, J=12.9; 11.0 Hz, 1H), 3.26 (dd, J=13.7; 11.0 Hz, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 4.07 (t, J=9.0 Hz, 1H), 4.63 (t, J=9.6 Hz, 1H), 6.72 (d, J=10.0  
25 Hz, 2H), 6.80 (d, J=10.0 Hz, 2H), 7.44 (d, J=11.5 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.80 (s, 1H), and 7.97 (m, 3H); mass spectrum (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/e* 449 (M+1).

**Example 57 - D-Ornithyl-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine Isoamylamide Trifluoroacetate****(A) Boc-D-β-(2-Naphthyl)alanine Isoamylamide**

- 30 Boc-D-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine (190 mg) and isoamylamine were coupled using a modification of Procedure C to afford titled compound (233 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.89 (t, 6H), 1.38 (m, 1H), 1.08 (m, 2H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 3.18 (m, 3H), 3.26 (dd, 1H), 4.39 (q, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.64 (m, 1H),

and 7.80 (m, 3H).

**(B)  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanine Isoamylamide**

A solution of Boc- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine isoamylamide (225 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (8 ml), was stirred for 2 hrs, concentrated and coevaporated thrice with toluene. This residue is dissolved in dichloromethane (10 ml) and  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithine (293 mg), diisopropylethylamine (0.14 ml) and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide (240 mg) added. After stirring for 10 hrs, the mixtures was poured into ethyl acetate and worked up as usual. Flash chromatography gave (B) (350 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.80 (t, 6H), 1.20 (m, 2H), 1.26 (s, 9H), 1.38 (m, 1H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.71 (m, 2H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 3.10 (m, 2H), 3.22 (m, 2H), 3.37 (dd, 1H), 4.02 (q, 1H), 4.73 (q, 1H), 7.35 (dd, 1H), 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.65 (s, 1H), and 7.80 (m, 3H).

**15 (C) D-Ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)alanine Isoamylamide Trifluoroacetate**

Deprotection of  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -Boc-D-ornithyl-D- $\beta$ -(2-naphthyl)alanine isoamylamide (B) (341 mg), by Procedure E, afforded titled product as a white solid (308 mg): HPLC (method A, retention time = 38.50 min);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  0.50 (dd, 6H), 0.91 (m, 3H), 1.81 (m, 1H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 2.83 (m, 1H), 3.09 (m, 3H), 3.17 (dd, 1H), 20 3.30 (dd, 1H), 4.06 (t, 1H), 4.62 (dd, 1H), 7.50 (d, 1H), 7.61 (m, 2H), 7.79 (m, 1H), and 7.99 (m, 3H).

**Example 58-D-Ornithyl-N-(Phenethyl)glycine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

**(A) Methyl N-(phenethyl)glycinate**

25 A cold solution (0°C) of glycine methyl ester hydrochloride (1.0 g, 8 mmol), methanol (25 mL), glacial acetic acid (0.8 mmol, and phenylacetaldehyde (0.481 g, 4 mmol) was treated with sodium triacetoxyborohydride (1.7 g, 8 mmol) in two portions. The reaction mixture was maintained at 0 °C for 1.5 hr, and then quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate (15 mL). The solution was extracted with ethyl 30 acetate. The organic phase was collected, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and adsorbed onto silica gel (100 mg) and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The column was eluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{MeOH}$  (97:3, v:v) to afford titled compound (258 mg).

(B) Methyl N-Boc-N-(phenethyl)glycinate

Methyl N-(phenethyl)glycinate (250 mg, 1.3 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of 1:1-water/dioxane, and sodium bicarbonate (2.6 mmol) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.9 mmol) were added. After 14 hr at 25°C, the dioxane was concentrated *in vacuo* and the aqueous solution neutralized to pH4 with 5% citric acid (5 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was collected, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford titled compound (358 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44-1.46 (9H), 2.80-2.89 (2H), 3.46-3.54 (2H), 3.73 (3H), 3.77 (1H), 3.89 (1H), and 7.0-7.3 (5H).

(C) N-Boc-N-(Phenethyl)glycine

A solution of methyl N-Boc-N-(phenethyl)glycinate (0.358 g, 1.2 mmol), methanol (20 mL) and 1M sodium hydroxide (2.4 mL, 2.4 mmol) was stirred for 14 hr at 25°C. After concentration *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in water (25 mL) and adjusted to pH4 with 5% citric acid (10 mL). The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and the organic phase dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated to afford titled carboxylic acid (311 mg).

(D) N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>δ</sub>-Bis-Boc-D-ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)glycine 2-Naphthylamide

A solution (0°C) of N<sub>α</sub>,N<sub>δ</sub>-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (130 mg, 0.39 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (1.6 mmol) and methylene chloride (10 mL) was treated with PyBroP (275 mg, 0.59 mmol) and kept at 0°C for 30 min. In another reaction, a solution of Boc-N-(phenethyl)glycine 2-naphthylamide (240 mg, 0.59 mmol) (made by coupling of N-Boc-N-(phenethyl)glycine and 2-naphthylamine) and trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL) was stored at 24°C for 1 hr and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was coevaporated twice with methylene chloride and the resultant solid resuspended in methylene chloride (10 mL) and treated with diisopropylethylamine (1.2 mmol). The two solutions were mixed and stirred at 25°C for 1 hr at which time the mixture was washed with 1M hydrochloric acid (2 x 25 mL), sat. sodium bicarbonate (25 mL), and brine (25 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and adsorbed onto silica gel (500 mg) and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The column was eluted with ethyl acetate:hexane (50:50, v:v) to afford the titled

compound.

(E) D-Ornithyl-N-(Phenethyl)glycine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate

A solution of  $N_\alpha, N_\delta$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithyl-N-(phenethyl)glycine 2-naphthylamide (100 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) was maintained at 25°C for 1 hr, and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was chromatographed on a reverse-phase column (Amberchrome) with elution with acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid. The appropriate fractions were lyophilized to afford the titled compound (45 mg):

10

**Example 59 - Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

A solution of  $N_\alpha$ -benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine (300 mg), diisopropylethylamine (326  $\mu$ l), and anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (4 ml) was treated with PyBop (585 mg) at 0°C for 10 min., followed by the addition of a solution of 3-phenylpropylamine (147  $\mu$ l) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (2 ml). The resulting solution was stirred at ambient temperature for 4 hrs. The reaction was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The product was purified by chromatography over silica gel (hexane/ethyl acetate) to give  $N_\alpha$ -benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (370 mg):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (s, 9H), 1.6-1.9 (m, 6H), 2.2 (s, 3H), 2.65 (t,  $J=6.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.0-3.4 (m, 5H), 3.64 (s, 2H), 4.8 (s, 1H), and 7.1-7.5 (m, 10H).

A mixture of the above product, methanol (50 ml), 6N hydrochloric acid (141  $\mu$ l), and 10% palladium-on-carbon (37 mg) was shaken in a Parr hydrogenator (40 psi) for 24 hours. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and the organic layer was dried and concentrated. The product was purified by chromatography over silica gel (methylene chloride/methanol) to give  $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 3-phenylpropylamide.

A cold solution (0°C) of N-Boc-homophenylalanine (221 mg), diisopropylethylamine

(228  $\mu$ l), and anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (4 ml) was treated with PyBrop (398 mg), followed by the addition of a solution of  $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (228 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml). The resulting solution was stirred for overnight. The precipitate was filtered and the solid was washed with ethyl acetate.

- 5 The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the product purified by silica gel chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate) to give *N-Boc-homophenylalanyl-N $\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine 3-phenylpropylamide* (260 mg):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (s, 18H), 1.7-2.0 (m, 8H), 2.58 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.6-2.85 (m, 5H), 3.0-3.4 (m, 4H), 4.4-4.5 (m, 1H), 4.9-5.0 (m, 1H), and 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H).

10

The above product was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (2 ml) for 30 min. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC (Amberchrome) with acetonitrile / 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid as the eluent. The desired fraction was lyophilized to give *homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -methyl-*  
15 *ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide*:  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 8H), 2.58 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 2.6-2.8 (m, 5H), 3.15 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.30-3.35 (m, 2H), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1H), 5.05-5.10 (m, 1H), and 7.05-7.3 (m, 10H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  425 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 290, 264, and 129.

20 **Example 60 - Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 3-(4-Methylphenyl)propylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 59, with *N*-Boc-homophenylalanine,  $N_\alpha$ -benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine, and 3-(4-methylphenyl)propylamine used as starting materials:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$   
25 1.40-1.75 (m, 6H), 1.9-2.1 (m, 2H), 2.2 (s, 3H), 2.48 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 2.6-2.8 (m, 5H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.22-3.30 (m, 2H), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1H), 4.95-5.00 (m, 1H), and 6.9-7.2 (m, 9H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  439 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 290, 278, 261, and 129.

**Example 61 - Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 3-(4-Methoxyphenyl)propylamide**

30 **Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 59, with *N*-Boc-homophenylalanine,  $N_\alpha$ -benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-  $N_\alpha$ -methylornithine, and 3-(4-methoxyphenyl)propyl-

amine used as starting materials:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.05-2.15 (m, 2H), 2.6 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 2.8 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.0 (s, 3H), 3.05 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.15-3.40 (m, 2H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 4.60-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.95-5.05 (m, 1H), 6.93 (d,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.15 (d,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), and 7.25-7.45 (m, 5H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  455 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 294, 290, 277, and 129.

**Example 62 - Homophenylalanyl  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 3-(4-fluorophenyl)propylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 59, with N-Boc-homophenylalanine,  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -benzyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine, and 3-(4-fluorophenyl)propylamine used as starting materials:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.65-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.1-2.3 (m, 2H), 2.6 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 2.8 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 3.0 (s, 3H), 3.05 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 2H), 3.15-3.40 (m, 2H), 4.55-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.95-5.05 (m, 1H), and 7.05-7.45 (m, 9H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  443 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 313, 290, 282, and 129.

**Example 63 - Glycyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-(Cyclohexyl)ethylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 59, with Boc-glycine,  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -benzyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine, and 2-(cyclohexyl)ethylamine used as starting materials: mass spectrum,  $m/e$  313 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 295, 356, 239, 186, and 129.

**Example 64 -  $\beta$ -(Cyclohexyl)alanyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-Phenethylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 59, with Boc- $\beta$ -(cyclohexyl)alanine,  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -benzyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine, and 2-phenethylamine used as starting materials and Boc- $\beta$ -(cyclohexyl)alanine were used:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.2-2.0 (m, 17H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 5H), 3.0-3.1 (m, 2H), 3.5-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.4-4.5 (m, 1H), 4.8-4.9 (m, 1H), and 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  403 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 381, 282, 250, and 129.

**Example 65 - Leucyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Methylornithine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

A mixture of  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -benzyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -methylornithine (2.13 g, 6.3 mmol), diisopropyl-ethylamine (2.2 ml, 12.6 mmol), and anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (20 ml)

was treated with PyBop (4 g, 7.6 mmol) at 0 °C for 10 min., followed by the addition of  $\beta$ -amino-naphthalene (1.09 g, 7.6 mmol). The resulting solution was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, and the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The product was purified by silica gel chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate) to afford *N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-naphthyl-amide* (2 g): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.6-1.9 (m, 4H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 3.2-3.3 (m, 2H), 3.7-3.8 (m, 2H), 4.7 (s, 1H), 7.25-7.8 (m, 11H), and 8.25 (s, 1H).

10

A mixture of the above product, methanol (60 ml), 6N hydrochloric acid (723  $\mu$ l, 4.3 mmol), and 10% palladium-on-carbon (200 mg) was shaken in Parr hydrogenator (40 psi) for 24 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was dried and concentrated. The product was purified by chromatography with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH as the eluent to give *N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-naphthylamide* (1 g): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.6-1.8 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.2 (m, 2H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 3.1-3.3 (m, 2H), 4.1-4.3 (m, 1H), 5.0 (s, 1H), 7.4-7.5 (m, 2H), 7.7-7.8 (m, 4H), and 8.4 (s, 1H).

20

*N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-naphthylamide* (149 mg, 0.40 mmol), *N*-Boc-leucine N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (166 mg, 0.5 mmol) and dimethylformamide (3 ml) was stirred overnight at 70 °C. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated. The product was purified by chromatography (silica gel - hexane/ethyl acetate) to give *N-Boc-leucyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-naphthylamide* (44 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.9-1.0 (m, 6H), 1.4-1.8 (m, 25H), 3.05 (s, 3H), 3.1-3.2 (m, 2H), 4.6-4.7 (m, 1H), 5.1-5.2 (m, 1H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 2H), 7.7-7.8 (m, 4H), and 8.1 (s, 1H).

30

*N*-Boc-leucyl-*N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine 2-naphthylamide* was treated with TFA at 25°C for 30 min. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC (Amberchrome - CH<sub>3</sub>CN/0.1% TFA-H<sub>2</sub>O). The desired



fraction was lyophilized to give titled product:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.0-1.1 (m, 6H), 1.7-1.9 (m, 5H), 2.0-2.2 (m, 2H), 3.1-3.3 (m, 5H), 4.6-4.7 (m, 1H), 5.1-5.2 (m, 1H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 3H), and 7.9-8.1 (m, 4H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  384 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 271, 241, 194, and 129.

5

**Example 66 - Glycyl- $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

A solution of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (4.68 g, 23 mmol) and ethyl acetate (100 ml) was added to a solution of  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Fmoc- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-ornithine (10.3 g, 23 mmol) and penta-fluorophenol (4.17 g, 23 mmol) in ethyl acetate (200 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at 25°C for 2 hours and the solid formed during reaction was removed by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give the activated ester as a white solid. The activated ester (12.7 g, 20 mmol), 3-phenylpropylamine (2.76 g, 20 mmol), and dimethylformamide (100 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 4 hours. The solution was then treated with piperidine (5 ml) for 1 hour at 25°C and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was dried, concentrated, and purified by chromatography to give  $\text{N}_\delta$ -Boc-ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (5 g):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.4 (s, 9H), 1.45-1.7 (m, 4H), 1.8-1.9 (m, 2H), 2.6 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 3.0-3.1 (m, 2H), 3.2-3.3 (m, 2H), 3.3-3.4 (m, 1H), and 7.1-7.3 (m, 5H).

A cold solution (0°C) of the above amine (3 g, 8.6 mmol), in methanol (20 ml), was treated sequentially with acetic acid (345  $\mu\text{l}$ , 6 mmol) and phenylacetaldehyde (1.2 ml, 10 mmol). Then a solution of sodium cyanoborohydride (2.7 g, 43 mmol) in methanol (10 ml) was added to the mixture slowly. The reaction was stirred for additional 30 minutes and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and purified by chromatography (silica gel, hexane/ethyl acetate) to afford  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(phenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (2.64 g):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.4 (s, 9H), 1.45-1.8 (m, 6H), 2.6 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.65-2.8 (m, 4H), 3.0-3.2 (m, 5H), and 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H).

A cold solution (0°C) of Boc-glycine (543 mg, 3.1 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (1

ml, 6.2 mmol), and tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was treated with PyBrop (1.45 g, 3.1 mmol), followed by the addition of  $N_\alpha$ -phenethyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (1.28 g, 2.8 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml). The resulting solution was stirred overnight. The precipitate was filtered and the solid washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the product purified by chromatography (silica gel - hexane/ethyl acetate) to give *N*-Boc-glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -phenethyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide (1.2 g).

The above product was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) for 30 min and the solution was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC (Amberchrome -  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}/0.1\%$  TFA- $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ ) and the desired fraction was lyophilized to give desired product:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.5-2.6 (m, 2H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.4-3.5 (m, 2H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 4.5-4.6 (m, 1H), and 7.1-7.4 (m, 10H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  411 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 393, 354, 336, 276, and 219.

**Example 67 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine 2-Naphthylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\beta$ -aminonaphthalene was used as the starting material:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.7-2.2 (m, 4H), 3.0-3.2 (m, 6H), 3.8-4.0 (m, 2H), 5.0-5.1 (m, 1H), and 7.3-6.25 (m, 12H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  419 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 401, 298, 276, 258, and 219.

**Example 68 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine Quinoline-3-amide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except 3-aminoquinoline was used as the starting material:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.7-2.3 (m, 4H), 3.0-3.3 (m, 4H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 3.9-4.1 (m, 2H), 5.0-5.1 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 1H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H), 7.8-8.2 (m, 4H), 8.8 (s, 1H), and 9.1 (s, 1H); mass spectrum  $m/e$  420 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 363, 346, 219, 174, and 145.

**Example 69 -  $\beta$ -Alanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\beta$ -Boc-alanine was used as the acylating reagent:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.1 (m, 6H), 2.7 (t,

J=6.4 Hz, 2H), 2.8-3.1 (m, 6H), 3.25-3.4 (m, 4H), 3.6-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.6-4.7 (m, 1H), and 7.3-7.5 (m, 10H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 425 ( $M^+$ ), 290, 219, 174, and 105.

**Example 70 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(2-Hydroxyphenethyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

- 5 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except (2-hydroxyphenyl)-acetaldehyde was used in the reductive amination step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  .6-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.6 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 2H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.4-3.6 (m, 2H), 3.9-4.0 (m, 2H), 4.5-4.6 (m, 1H), and 6.8-7.3 (m, 9H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 427 ( $M^+$ ), 370, 353, 292, 235, 174, and 190.

10

**Example 71 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(*iso*-Amyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

- This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except isovaleraldehyde was used in the reductive amination step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  0.95 (d, J=6.8 Hz, 6H), 1.5-2.0 (m, 9H), 2.7 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.0-3.2 (m, 2H), 3.25-3.45 (m, 4H),  
15 4.0-4.2 (m, 2H), 4.6 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 1H), and 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 377 ( $M^+$ ), 359, 320, 242, 185, and 140.

**Example 72 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(2-Benzo[*b*]furanylmethyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

- 20 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except benzo[*b*]furan-2-carboxaldehyde was used in the reductive amination step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.5-2.1 (m, 6H), 2.5 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 2H), 2.8-3.2 (m, 6H), 4.2-4.4 (m, 2H), 6.9 (s, 1H), and 7.2-7.8 (m, 9H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 437 ( $M^+$ ), 380, 302, 245, and 131.

25 **Example 73 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(3-Quinolinylmethyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

- This was similarly prepared, as in Example 66, except quinoline-3-carboxaldehyde was used in the reductive amination step:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.2-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.2-2.4 (m, 2H), 2.6-2.8 (m, 2H), 3.0-3.2 (m, 2H), 4.1-4.4 (m, 4H), 4.8-4.9 (m,  
30 1H), 7.0-7.1 (m, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 3H), 7.9-8.2 (m, 4H), 8.9 (s, 1H), and 9.1 (s, 1H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 448 ( $M^+$ ), 430, 391, 313, and 256.

**Example 74 - Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine 5-Indanylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except 5-aminoindan was used as a starting material:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.7-2.3 (m, 6H), 2.9-3.2 (m, 8H), 3.7-4.0 (m, 4H), 5.0 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 1H), and 7.2-7.5 (m, 8H).

5 **Example 75 - Glycyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)lysine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc- $\text{N}_\epsilon$ -Cbz-lysine was used as a starting material:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.5-2.1 (m, 8H), 2.6 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 2H), 3.5-3.6 (m, 2H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 4.7-4.8 (m, 1H), and 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  453 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 354, 300, 247, and 219.

**Example 76 -  $\beta$ -Alanyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)lysine 3-Phenylpropylamide Trifluoroacetate**

Similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc--Cbz-lysine and  $\beta$ -Boc-alanine were used as starting materials:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.3-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.7-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.65 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.0-3.1 (m, 2H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 4H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 4.8-4.9 (m, 1H), and 7.2-7.5 (m, 10); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  440 ( $\text{M}^++1$ ), 368, 304, 233, and 188.

**Example 77 - Glycyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)diaminobutyric acid 3-Phenylpropylamide**

20 **Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Cbz-N-Boc-L-diaminobutyric acid was used as the starting material:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.8-2.0 (m, 2H), 2.1-2.4 (m, 2H), 2.7 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.9-3.1 (m, 4H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 2H), 3.6-3.8 (m, 2H), 3.9-4.1 (m, 2H), 4.7-4.8 (m, 1H), and 7.2-7.5 (m, 10H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  397 ( $\text{M}^+$ ), 379, 276, 242, and 205.

**Example 78 -  $\beta$ -Alanyl-  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)diaminobutyric acid 3-Phenylpropylamide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Cbz-N-Boc-L-diaminobutyric acid and  $\beta$ -Boc-alanine were used as starting materials:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.8-2.0 (m, 2H), 2.1-2.4 (m, 2H), 2.7 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.9-3.1 (m, 6H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 4H), 3.6-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.7-4.8 (m, 1H), and 7.2-7.5 (m, 10H);

mass spectrum,  $m/e$  411 ( $M^+$ ), 393, 340, 276, and 205.

**Example 79 -- Aminobutyryl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)diaminopropionic acid 3-Phenylpropyl-amide  
Trifluoroacetate**

- 5 This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 66, except  $N_\alpha$ -Cbz- $N_\beta$ -Boc-L-diaminopropionic acid and N-Boc-aminobutyric acid were used as starting materials:  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $D_2O$ )  $\delta$  1.7-1.9 (m, 4H), 2.4-2.6 (m, 4H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.1-3.3 (m, 4H), 3.5-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H), and 7.2-7.4 (m, 10H).

10 **Example 80 -- Aminobutyryl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)diaminopropionic Acid Quinoline-3-amide  
Trifluoroacetate**

- This was similarly prepared as described in Example 66, except  $N_\alpha$ -Cbz- $N_\beta$ -Boc-L-diaminopropionic acid, 3-aminoquinoline, and N-Boc-aminobutyric acid were used as starting materials:  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $D_2O$ )  $\delta$  1.9-2.1 (m, 2H), 2.6-2.9 (m, 2H),  
15 3.0-3.2 (m, 4H), 3.4-3.5 (m, 1H), 3.8-4.0 (m, 3H), 4.8-4.9 (m, 1H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 5H), 8.0 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 1H), 8.4 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 1H), 8.3 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 2H), 9.05 (s, 1H), and 9.4 (s, 1H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  420 ( $M^+$ ), 402, 335, 299, and 270.

**Example 81 - Acetimidoyleglycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(Phenethyl)ornithine 3-Phenylpropylamide**

20 **Trifluoroacetate**

- Glycyl-  $N_\alpha$ -(phenethyl)ornithine 3-phenylpropylamide trifluoroacetate was treated with ethyl acetimidate in ethanol at pH9 and the product was purified by HPLC:  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $D_2O$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 6H), 2.3 (s, 3H), 2.7 (t,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 2H), 2.9-3.1 (m, 4H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 2H), 3.5-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.1-4.3 (m, 2H), 4.7-4.8 (m, 1H), and 7.2-  
25 7.5 (m, 10H); mass spectrum,  $m/e$  453 ( $M^+$ ), 354, 300, 247, and 219.

**Example 82 - Homophenylalanine N-(3-Aminopropyl)-3-Phenylpropylamide**

**Trifluoroacetate**

- A mixture of 3-phenylpropylamine (0.95 g, 7 mmol) and acrylonitrile (0.55 ml, 8.4  
30 mmol) in ethanol (30 ml) was refluxed for 2 hours to give *N*-(2-cyanoethyl)-3-phenyl-propylamine.

A solution of Boc-homophenylalanine (136 mg, 0.49 mmol), diisopropylethylamine

(169  $\mu$ l mg, 0.97 mmol), and tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) was treated with PyBrop (248 mg, 0.63 mmol) at 0°C. (2-cyanoethyl)-3-phenylpropylamine (109 mg, 0.58 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 ml) was added dropwise and the reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The solid was filtered and rinsed with ethyl acetate, and the filtrate was concentrated and purified by chromatography to give *Boc-homophenylalanine* (2-cyanoethyl)-3-phenylpropylamide. A mixture of above product (200 mg), 10% palladium-on-carbon (20 mg), and methanol (40 ml) was hydrogenated on a Parr hydrogenator (40 psi) overnight. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was then treated with trifluoroacetic acid for 30 min. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the product was purified by reverse phase HPLC to give white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.8-2.1 (m, 6H), 2.5-2.8 (m, 4H), 3.0-3.3 (m, 4H), 3.3-3.7 (m, 2H), 4.0-4.1 (m, 1H), and 7.3-7.5 (m, 10H).

**Example 83 -  $\beta$ -(Cyclohexyl)alanyl-N-(3-Aminopropyl)-3-(Cyclohexyl)propylamide Trifluoroacetate**

A suspension of homophenylalanine N-(3-aminopropyl)-3-phenylpropylamide (100 mg), platinum dioxide (10 mg), 6N hydrochloric acid (0.1 ml), and 20 ml of methanol was hydrogenated in a Parr hydrogenator (40 psi) for 24 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the product purified by reverse phase HPLC to give titled compound: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  0.9-1.05 (m, 4H), 1.1-1.4 (m, 13H), 1.6-1.8 (m, 12H), 1.9-2.1 (m, 3H), 3.05-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.4-3.7 (m, 4H), and 4.4-4.5 (m, 1H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 366 (M<sup>+</sup>), 349, 225, 199, and 182.

**Example 84 - Homophenylalanyl-N-(3-Aminopropyl)aminoethyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 82, except (2-naphthoxy)ethyl-amine was used as a starting material: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.9-2.0 (m, 2H), 2.2-2.4 (m, 2H), 2.6-2.8 (m, 2H), 2.9-3.1 (m, 2H), 3.4-3.6 (m, 2H), 3.6-3.8 (m, 2H), 4.2-4.4 (m, 2H), 4.5-4.6 (m, 1H), and 6.9-7.9 (m, 12H).

**Example 85 - Homophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Phenethyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

A well, stirred cold solution (0°C) of N <sub>$\alpha$</sub> -Boc-N <sub>$\delta$</sub> -Cbz-ornithine (5 g, 13.6 mmol),

- diisopropylethylamine (5.9 ml, 34 mmol), and tetrahydrofuran (60 ml) was treated with ethyl chloroformate (3.25 ml, 34 mmol) at 0 °C. Sodium borohydride (2.58 g, 68 mmol) was added, followed by the slow addition of 1:1-tetrahydrofuran/water (10 ml) 30 minutes later. The reaction mixture was acidified with 6N hydrochloric acid and the solution was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and purified by chromatography to give *N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinol* (3.9 g): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.2-1.4 (m, 13H), 3.0 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.4 (s, 2H), 3.8 (s, 1H), 4.95 (s, 2H), and 7.1-7.2 (m, 5H).
- Diethyl azodicarboxylate (180 μl, 1.1 mmol) was added to a solution of triphenylphosphine (288 mg, 1.1 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) at 0°C and the mixture was further stirred for 30 min. at 0°C. A solution of *N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinol* (200 mg, 0.57 mmol), thioacetic acid (86 μl, 1.1 mmol), and tetrahydrofuran (2 ml) was added and the mixture was then stirred at 25°C for 3 hours. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The product was purified by chromatography to give *N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinethiol S-acetate* (189 mg) which in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) was reacted with 0.5N sodium methoxide (2 ml) at 25°C for 4 hours. The resulting solution was treated with (2-iodoethyl)benzene (320 mg, 1.4 mmol) and was stirred for overnight. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water, and purified by chromatography to give *N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-phenethyl thioether* (160 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.4-1.7 (m, 13H), 2.6-2.9 (m, 6H), 3.1-3.3 (m, 2H), 3.7 (s, 1H), 5.1 (s, 2H), and 7.2-7.4 (m, 10H).
- The above product was treated sequentially with trifluoroacetic acid to remove the Boc group, followed by PyBrop-mediated acylation with Boc-homophenylalanine to give *Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-phenethyl thioether*. Protecting groups were removed sequentially -i) catalytic hydrogenation and ii) trifluoroacetic acid to give *homophenylalanyl-ornithinyl 2-phenethyl thioether trifluoroacetate*: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 1.3-1.6 (m, 4H), 1.9-2.0 (m, 2H), 2.6-2.8 (m, 10H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), and 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H); mass spectrum, *m/e* 400 (M<sup>+</sup>), 383, 319, 239, 222, and 200.

**Example 86 - Phenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate****(A) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-Ornithinol Methanesulfonate**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinol (363 mg) in dichloromethane (10 ml) at 0°C, under nitrogen atmosphere, was treated sequentially with methanesulfonyl chloride (110 μl, 1.4 eq) and triethylamine (200 μl, 1.4 eq). After 3 hrs, the solution was poured into dichloromethane and worked up as usual. The crude product, which is very pure (400 mg), is a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.63 (m, 4H), 3.02 (s, 3H), 3.24 (m, 2H), 3.84 (m, 1H), 4.19 (dd, J=9.5; 3.7 Hz, 1H), 4.23 (d, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 5.14 (s, 2H), and 7.39 (m, 5H).

10

**(B) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinol methanesulfonate (A) (100 mg) in dimethylformamide (2.5 ml), is added sodium iodide (71 mg), 2-naphthalenethiol (66 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (85 μl) was maintained at 70°C for 12h. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate and worked up as usual. After chromatography (10 to 30 % ethyl acetate /hexane), there was obtained intermediate (B) (60 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.42-1.78 (m, 4H), 3.19 (m, 4H), 3.86 (m, 1H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 7.38 (m, 5H), 7.44 (m, 3H), 7.75 (d, J=11.3 Hz, 2H), 7.80 (d, J=10.1 Hz, 1H), and 7.85 (s, 1H).

20

**(C) Boc-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl thioether (B) (60 mg) and 4M hydrochloric acid/ dioxane (3 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 1.5 h and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was coupled to Boc-phenylalanine by Procedure C, followed by silica gel chromatography (20 to 30%-ethyl acetate / hexane) to give a glassy solid (73 mg).

25

**(D) Phenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

A solution of Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl thioether (C) (30 mg) and a mixture of trifluoroacetic acid-triethylsilane (3:1) (10 ml) was stirred at 25°C for 1 hr and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by HPLC to afford desired product (10 mg) as a white solid: HPLC (method A, retention time =

30



46.26 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.69 (m, 2H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 2.84 (t, J= 8.4, 2H), 3.02 (m, 2H), 3.09 (dd, J=14.4; 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.22 (dd, J=14.0; 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.15 (t, J= 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 7.34 (m, 3H), 7.48 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 3H), 7.93 (t, J=7.2, 1H), and 7.97 (m, 2H).

5

**Example 87 - Homophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether  
Trifluoroacetate**

**(A) N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinol methanesulfonate (100 mg), sodium iodide  
10 (70 mg), dimethylformamide (2.5 ml), 2-mercaptobenzothiazole (70 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (85 μl) was stirred at 70°C for 12h. After cooling to ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate and worked up. The crude material was chromatographed over silica gel (20 to 50 % ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford titled product (50 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400  
15 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.58-1.69 (m, 4H), 3.22 (m, 2H), 3.54 (m, 2H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 5.12 (s, 2H), 7.23-7.42 (m, 7H), 7.77 (d, J=10.3 Hz, 1H), and 7.86 (d, J=9.7 Hz, 1H).

**(B) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether**

20 Coupling of N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether and Boc-homophenylalanine afforded a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.63-1.79 (m, 5H), 1.92 (m, 1H), 2.49 (m, 2H), 3.23 (m, 2H), 3.58 (broad d, J=14.1 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (dd, J=13.5; 10.3 Hz, 1H), 4.01 (m, 1H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 5.12 (s, 2H), 6.97 (d, J=9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.18 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 5H), 7.37 (m, 3H), 7.48 (t, J=8.3  
25 Hz, 1H), 7.73 (d, J= 8.4 Hz, 1H), and 8.02 (m, 1H).

**(C) Homophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

A solution of Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether  
(B) (35 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) was kept at 25°C for 2 hrs and  
30 concentrated *in vacuo*. After HPLC purification (method A, retention time = 42.1 min), there was obtained a white solid (33 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.78-1.90 (m, 4H), 2.04 (m, 2H), 2.62 (m, 2H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 3.44 (dd, J=13.3; 9.6 Hz,

1H), 3.79 (dd, J=13.0; 2.7 Hz, 1H), 4.06 (t, J=5.9 Hz, 1H), 4.41 (m, 1H), 7.03 (m, 2H), 7.24 (m, 3H), 7.42 (t, J=8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (t, J=9.4 Hz, 1H), 7.81 (d, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), and 7.85 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 1H).

5    **Example 88 - D-Phenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-D-Phenylalanyl-N<sub>ε</sub>-CBz-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether

This compound is prepared in two steps. N<sub>α</sub>-Boc-N<sub>ε</sub>-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether (140 mg) is treated with 4M hydrochloric acid in dioxane (5 ml) for 20  
10 min and concentrated *in vacuo*. The intermediate N<sub>ε</sub>-CBz-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether is dissolved in dimethylformamide (3 ml), diisopropylethylamine (50 μl) and Boc-phenylalanine N-hydroxysuccinimide ester are added. After stirring 12h, concentration and silica gel chromatography (1 to 2% methanol / CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) afforded pure intermediate (129 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz,  
15 CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.53 (m, 2H), 1.62 (m, 2H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 2.98 (dd, J=14.2; 7.7 Hz, 1H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 3.42 (m, 2H), 4.23 (m, 2H), 6.12 (s, 2H), 6.91 (m, 2H), 7.09 (m, 3H), 7.35 (m, 6H), 7.44 (t, J=10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (d, J=9.1 Hz, 1H), and 7.90 (d, J=10.1 Hz, 1H).

20    (B) D-Phenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate

Boc-D-phenylalanyl-N<sub>ε</sub>-CBz-ornithinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether (A) was stirred at 25°C with trifluoroacetic acid-triethylsilane (3:1 - 10 ml) for 2 hrs and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by HPLC (method C, retention time = 49.57 min); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.46 (m, 3H), 1.74 (m, 1H), 2.98 (m, 2H),  
25 3.22 (m, 2H), 3.40 (dd, J=13.6; 8.0 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (d, J=14.0 Hz, 1H), 4.17 (m, 2H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.44 (m, 3H), 7.52 (t, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (t, J=7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.94 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), and 8.02 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H).

**Example 89 - 4-Fluorophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether**

30    **Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 86, except Boc-4-fluorophenyl-alanine and N<sub>ε</sub>-CBz-ornithinyl 2-benzimidazolyl thioether were the starting materials.

**Example 90 - D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate****(A) N-Boc-D-Phenylalaninol Methanesulfonate**

A cold solution (0°C) of N-Boc-D-phenylalaninol (0.53 g, 2.09 mmol) in anhydrous methylene chloride (20 mL) was treated sequentially with methanesulfonyl chloride (360 mg, 3.14 mmol) and triethylamine (0.32 g, 3.14 mmol). The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 2 hr, quenched with 1M hydrochloric acid (2 x 25 mL) and extracted with methylene chloride. The combined extract was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 x 25 mL), and brine (1 x 25 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate adsorbed onto silica gel and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The title compound was eluted from the column with hexane:ethyl acetate (60:40, v:v) to furnish titled compound (352 mg) as a white solid.

**(B) N-Boc-D-phenylalaninyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether**

A mixture of N-Boc-D-phenylalaninol mesylate (0.3 g, 0.9 mmol), dimethylformamide (10 mL), 2-napthalenethiol (0.22 g, 1.39 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (1.39 mmol) and sodium iodide (0.14 g, 0.93 mmol) was kept at 80 °C for 18 hr, cooled to room temperature and methylene chloride (25 ml) was added. This mixture was washed with water (2 x 10 mL), 1M sodium hydroxide (3 x 10 mL) and brine (2 x 15 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate adsorbed onto silica gel and applied to a column prepacked with silica gel. The title compound (121 mg) was eluted with hexane:ethyl acetate (90:10, v:v) to afford a white solid.

25

**(C) D-Ornithyl-D-phenylalaninyl 2-Naphthyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

N-Boc-D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl thioether was deprotected (Procedure E) to afford *D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl thioether trifluoroacetate* which was coupled (Procedure B) with  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-ornithine. The  $N_{\alpha},N_{\delta}$ -bis-Boc-ornithyl-*D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl thioether* was deprotected by exposure to trifluoroacetic acid to afford after HPLC purification the titled compound:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.60-1.70 (4H), 2.64-2.70 (2H), 2.90-3.30 (3H), 3.41-3.50 (1H), 3.80-3.82 (1H), 4.39-4.41 (1H), 7.23-7.70 (8H), and 7.80-8.05 (4H); mass spectrum (relative

intensity)  $m/e$  408 (100, M+1).

**Example 91 - D-Lysyl-D-Leucinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 90, except  $N_\alpha, N_\epsilon$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine and D-leucinyl 2-benzothiazolyl thioether were used.

**Example 92 - D-(3-Chlorotyrosyl)-D-Phenylalaninyl 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 90, except Boc-D-3-chloro-tyrosine and D-phenylalaninyl 2-benzimidazolyl thioether were used.

**Example 93 - D- $\beta$ -(4-Pyridyl)alanyl-D-Methioninyl 3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 90, except Boc-D- $\beta$ -(4-pyridyl)-alanine and D-methioninyl 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl thioether were used.

**Example 94 - D-Ornithyl-D-Cysteinyl 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 90, except  $N_\alpha, N_\delta$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine and D-cysteinyl 2-benzimidazolyl thioether were used.

**Example 95 - Homophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

**(A)  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Cbz-Ornithinol**

This was prepared from  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Cbz-ornithine using Procedure F:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (broad s, 10H), 1.57 (m, 3H), 3.21 (m, 2H), 3.53-3.66 (m, 3H), 5.09 (s, 2H), and 7.38 (m, 5H).

**(B)  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Cbz-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether**

Solution of  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Cbz-ornithinol (587 mg), dichloromethane (17 ml), 2-naphthol (288 mg), triphenylphosphine (524 mg) and  $N, N'$ -diisopropylazodicarboxamide (393  $\mu\text{l}$ ) was stirred for 12 hrs at 25°C, under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was poured into dichloromethane and washed successively with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concen-

trated *in vacuo*. Further purification by flash chromatography gave the titled product (534 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.41 (s, 9H), 1.60-1.73 (m, 4H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 4.01 (m, 3H), 5.07 (s, 2H), 7.09 (s, 1H), 7.11 (d,  $J=8.3$  Hz, 1H), 7.28 (m, 6H), 7.40 (t,  $J=8.4$  Hz, 1H), and 7.71 (m, 3H).

5

(C) Boc-Homophenylalanyl- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Cbz-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

Solution of  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc- $\text{N}_\delta$ -Cbz-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (273 mg) and 4M hydrochloric acid/ dioxane (3 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 h and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude residue is coupled to Boc-homophenylalanine *as per* Procedure C, followed by flash chromatography (40% ethyl acetate / hexane) to give desired product (130 mg) as a glassy solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.44 (s, 9H), 1.62 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 2H), 3.25 (m, 2H), 4.05 (m, 2H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 5.11 (s, 1H), 7.09-7.19 (m, 7H), 7.32 (m, 6H), 7.45 (t,  $J=9.0$  Hz, 1H), and 7.75 (m, 3H).

15

(D) Homophenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate

Hydrogen was bubbled through a solution of  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc-homophenylalanyl-N-Cbz-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (C) (130 mg) and methanol (10 ml), with 10% palladium-on-charcoal (10 mg), until starting material was absent (thin-layer chromatography). The reaction mixture is filtered through a 0.45  $\mu\text{m}$  nylon pad and concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (2 ml). After 1 hr, the solution was concentrated *in vacuo*:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.82-1.91 (m, 4H), 2.16 (m, 2H), 2.63 (m, 2H), 3.17 (m, 2H), 4.12 (t,  $J=5.0$ ; 8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (dd,  $J=11.6$ ; 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.37 (dd,  $J=11.6$ ; 2.3 Hz, 1H), 4.98 (m 1H), 6.90 (d,  $J=10.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.07 (t,  $J=9.0$  Hz, 2H), 7.18 (d,  $J=7.7$  Hz, 1H), 7.21 (d,  $J=9.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.40 (s, 1H), 7.50 (t,  $J=8.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.59 (t,  $J=7.5$  Hz, 1H), and 7.80-7.92 (m, 3H).

20  
25

**Example 96 - 2-Methyltyrosyl-Ornithinyl 1-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared as described in Example 95, except Boc-2-methyltyrosine and  $\text{N}_\alpha$ -Boc- $\text{N}_\delta$ -CBz-ornithinyl 1-naphthyl ether were used.

30

**Example 97 -  $\beta$ -(2-Thienyl)alanyl-Lysinyl 3,4-Dimethylphenyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared as described in Example 95, except Boc- $\beta$ -(2-thienyl)-

alanine and  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\epsilon$ -Cbz-lysyl 3,4-dimethylphenyl ether were used.

**Example 98 - Leucyl-D-Leucyl 2-Benzimidazolyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared as described in Example 95, except Boc-leucine and D-leucyl 2-benzimidazolyl ether were used.

**Example 99 - D-Lysyl-D-Leucyl 3-Quinolyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared as described in Example 95, except  $N_\alpha$ , $N_\epsilon$ -bis-Boc-D-lysine and D-leucyl 3-quinolyl ether were used.

**Example 100 - D-Ornithyl-D-Phenylalaninyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared as described in Example 95, except  $N_\alpha$ , $N_\delta$ -bis-Boc-D-ornithine and D-phenylalaninyl 2-naphthyl ether were used:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  2.58-2.80 (4H), 2.65-2.68 (2H), 2.98-3.23 (2H), 3.90-4.00 (1H), 4.20-4.40 (2H), 4.61-4.64 (1H), 7.25-7.60 (10H), and 7.80-8.05 (2H); mass spectrum (relative intensity)  $m/e$  392 (80,  $M+1$ ).

**Example 101 - Phenylalanyl-Ornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was similarly prepared, as described in Example 95, except Boc-phenylalanine and  $N_\alpha$ -Boc- $N_\delta$ -Cbz-ornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether were used:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ )  $\delta$  1.78-1.89 (m, 4H), 3.10 (m, 3H), 3.23 (dd,  $J=13.6$ ; 6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.88 (dd,  $J=10.0$ ; 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.02 (dd,  $J=10.4$ ; 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.27 (m, 2H), 6.96 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 1H), 7.14 (m, 2H), 7.23 (m, 3H), 7.31 (s, 1H), 7.53 (t,  $J=8.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.64 (t,  $J=6.8$  Hz, 1H), and 7.97 (m, 3H).

**Example 102 - Homophenylalanyl-  $N_\alpha$ -Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

(A)  $N_\alpha$ -Benzyl- $N_\delta$ -Boc-Ornithine

A solution of  $N_\delta$ -Boc-ornithine (7.0 g), 2M sodium hydroxide (20 ml), benzaldehyde (3.2 ml) and methanol (10 ml) was cooled to  $0^\circ\text{C}$  and sodium borohydride (2.7 g) was added. After 1 hr at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , the mixture was kept at  $25^\circ\text{C}$  for 12h. Water (100 ml) was added and the mixture extracted with ether (2 X 60 ml). The combined

organic extract was washed with sat. sodium bicarbonate (*ca.* 150 ml) and water, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After concentration *in vacuo*, the desired product (4.5 g) was obtained as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.60 (m, 2H), 1.84 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 2H), 3.50 (t, J=7.4 Hz, 1H), 4.11 (d, J=11.9 Hz, 1H), 4.21 (d, J=11.9 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3H), and 7.49 (m, 2H).

(B) N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithine

36% Formalin (5.8 ml) is added to a suspension of N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-ornithine (A) (3.66 g) in acetonitrile (220 ml), methanol (110 ml) and water (110 ml), and the mixture stirred at 25°C until clear. After cooling to 0°C, sodium cyanoborohydride (1.6 g) was added and the mixture maintained at 25°C for 10 hrs. Water (190 ml) was added, and the mixture acidified with 5% citric acid to pH 3.5. After extracting with chloroform (3 X 60 ml), the combined organic phase is washed with brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Removal of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded amino acid (2.1 g) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.42 (s 9H), 1.61 (m, 1H), 1.73 (m, 1H), 1.97 (m, 2H), 2.77 (s, 3H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.61 (m, 1H), 4.30 (m, 2H), 7.46 (m, 3H), and 7.56 (m, 2H).

(C) N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinol

Using Procedure F, N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithine (B) (2.7 g) is converted to alcohol (C) (2.0 g) as a white solid, after silica gel chromatography (5% methanol/ dichloromethane): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.20 (m, 1H), 1.42 (broad s, 11H), 1.61 (m, 1H), 2.18 (s, 3H), 2.79 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 2H), 3.33 (broad s, 1H), 3.37 (t, J=10.4 Hz, 1H), 3.52 (m, 2H), 3.69 (d, J=13.2 Hz, 1H), and 7.24 (m, 5H).

(D) N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

A μξτυρρ N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol (168 mg), dichloromethane (10 ml), 2-naphthol (91 mg), triphenylphosphine (165 mg), and N,N'-diisopropylazodicarboxamide (124 μl) was stirred for 12 hrs at 25°C, under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was poured into dichloromethane and washed successively with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was then dried over

anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. Further purification by flash chromatography gave the titled product (90 mg) as a white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 2.39 (s, 3H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 3.82 (d, J=13.3, 1H), 3.93 (d, J=13.2, 1H), 4.11 (dd, J=9.6; 3.6, 1H), 4.29 (dd, J=10.2; 8.4, 1H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.29 (t, J=7.8, 1H), 7.39 (m, 5H), 7.50 (t, J=8.0, 1H), 7.79 (m, 3H).

(E) N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

A methanolic solution of N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (D) was reduced with hydrogen, over 5% palladium-on-carbon, to afford titled product: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.63 (m, 2H), 1.95 (m, 2H), 2.53 (s, 3H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 4.01 (dd, J=10.7; 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.12 (dd, J=10.5; 4.4 Hz, 1H), 7.19 (m, 2H), 7.35 (t, J=9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (t, J=8.9 Hz, 1H), and 7.75 (m, 3H).

(F) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

Using Procedure D, coupling of N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (E) and Boc-homophenylalanine afforded titled compound as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44 (2s, 18H), 1.58-1.70 (m, 4H), 1.98 (m, 2H), 2.73 (m, 2H), 2.83 (s, 3H), 3.18 (m, 2H), 4.08 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 7.09 (m, 2H), 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.49 (t, J=9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (t, J=9.0 Hz, 1H), and 7.81 (3H).

(G) Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate

Treatment of Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (F) (60 mg) with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E) afforded product as a white solid (63 mg); HPLC (method A): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.77 (m, 4H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 2.75 (m, 2H), 2.89 (s, 3H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 4.26 (dd, J=10.8; 3.2 Hz, 1H), 4.34 (t, J=10.8 Hz, 1H), 4.55 (m, 1H), 5.08 (m, 1H), 7.09 (m, 2H), 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.49 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (t, J=7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, J=9.2 Hz, 1H), 7.82 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), and 7.89 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H).

**Example 103 - O-Benzylseryl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**



(A) Boc-O-Benzylseryl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

Using Procedure D, crude N-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (37 mg) and Boc-O-benzylserine (62 mg) was coupled to afford product (62 mg) as a colorless oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.49 (broad s, 21H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 3.08 (s, 3H), 3.17 (s, 2H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 4.05 (dd, J=13.0; 3.8 Hz, 1H), 4.14 (dd, J=13.0; 7.3 Hz, 1H), 4.52 (m, 3H), 4.91 (m, 1H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.32 (m, 3H), 7.41 (m, 1H), and 7.69 (m, 3H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 636 (M+1).

(B) O-Benzylseryl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate

10 Boc-O-benzylseryl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether, after treatment with trifluoroacetic acid, afforded titled compound as a white solid: HPLC (method C); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (m, 1H), 1.63 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.88 (m, 2H), 3.86 (broad s, 4H), 4.47 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 5.05 (m, 1H), 6.86 (d, J=10.8 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 7.10 (m, 3H), 7.18 (m, 2H), 7.30 (t, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (t, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (t, J=8.7 Hz, 2H), and 7.75 (d, J=9.0 Hz, 1H); mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 436 (M+1).

**Example 104 - Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

(A) Boc-Tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether

20 Using Procedure D, crude N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (133 mg) and Boc-tyrosine (222 mg) is coupled to afford intermediate (125 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44 (m, 21H), 1.63 (m, 1H), 2.75 (s, 3H), 3.15 (m, 2H), 3.92 (m, 2H), 4.84 (m, 1H), 5.06 (m, 1H), 6.62 (d, J=10.2 Hz, 2H), 7.08 (m, 4H), 7.35 (m, 1H), 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.66 (d, J=10.9 Hz, 1H), and 7.75 (m, 3H).

25

(B) Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate

Boc-Tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (125 mg) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (Procedure E) to afford titled product (100 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.77 (m, 4H), 2.78 (m, 3H), 3.08 (m, 4H), 4.06 (dd, J=11.4; 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.17 (dd, J=11.5; 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.72 (t, J=7.8 Hz, 1H), 4.89 (m, 1H), 6.65 (d, J=10.8 Hz, 2H), 7.17 (d, J=10.8 Hz, 2H), 7.22 (dd, J=9.6; 1.1 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (s, 1H), 7.51 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.94 (m, 3H).

30

**Example 105 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl (4-Methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
5 Boc-phenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl (4-methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether.

**Example 106 - Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl (4-Methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
10 Boc-tyrosine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl (4-methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether.

**Example 107 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Benzylornithinyl (4-Methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
15 Boc-phenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-benzylornithinyl (4-methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether.

**Example 108 - Tyrosyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Ethylornithinyl (4-Methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
20 Boc-tyrosine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-ethylornithinyl (4-methoxy-2-naphthyl)ether.

**Example 109 - 4-Fluorohomophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Naphthyl Ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
25 Boc-4-fluorohomophenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether.

**Example 110 - 4-Fluorohomophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Quinoliny Ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were  
30 Boc-4-fluorohomophenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-quinoliny  
ether.

**Example 111 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 3-Quinoliny Ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-homophenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 3-quinoliny ether.

5

**Example 112 - 3-Fluorotyrosyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 4-Quinoliny Ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-3-fluorotyrosine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 4-quinoliny ether.

10

**Example 113 - Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>α</sub>-(4-Methoxybenzyl)ornithinyl 3-Quinoliny Ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-homophenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-(4-methoxybenzyl)ornithinyl 3-quinoliny ether.

15

**Example 114 - Tryptophane-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 3-Quinoliny Ether Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-tryptophane and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 3-quinoliny ether.

20

**Example 115 - 2,4-Dichlorophenylalanyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl (3,4-Dimethylphenyl) ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-2,4-dichlorophenylalanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl (3,4-dimethylphenyl) ether.

25

**Example 116 - β-(2-Naphthyl)alanyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl (3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl) ether  
Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 104, except the starting materials were Boc-β-(2-naphthyl)alanine and N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl (3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-ether .

30

**Example 117 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylargininyl 2-Naphthyl Ether****Trifluoroacetate****(A) N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-Bis-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylargininyl 2-Naphthyl Ether**

Compound is prepared in three steps from N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol.

- 5 First, the Boc protecting group is removed using trifluoroacetic acid, then the amine salt is guanidylated with N,N'-bis-Boc-1-guanylpurazole. Removal of the benzyl group was accomplished by catalytic hydrogenation over 5% palladium-on-carbon:.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 18H), 1.73 (m, 4H), 2.48 (s, 3H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.47 (m, 2H), 4.04 (dd, J=10.9; 6.0 Hz, 1H), 4.13 (dd, J=11.0; 2.7 Hz, 1H), 7.15
- 10 (m, 2H), 7.35 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 1H), and 7.94 (m, 3H).

**(B) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-Bis-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylargininyl 2-Naphthyl Ether**

- Using Procedure D, N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-bis-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylargininyl 2-naphthyl ether was coupled with Boc-homophenylalanine to afford a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz,
- 15 D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.47 (m, 29H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.76 (m, 1H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 2.04 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 2H), 2.85 (s, 3H), 4.11 (m, 2H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 5.14 (m, 1H), 6.99-7.16 (m, 7H), 7.49 (t, 1H), 7.59 (t, 1H), and 7.64-7.77 (m, 3H).

**(C) Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylargininyl 2-Naphthyl Ether Trifluoroacetate**

- 20 This compound is obtained by treatment of Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-bis-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylargininyl 2-naphthyl ether with trifluoroacetic acid, followed by HPLC purification.

**Example 118-N-(C-Amidino)homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylargininyl 2-Naphthyl Ether****25 Trifluoroacetate**

- Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-naphthyl ether (41 mg) and N,N'-bis-Boc-1-guanylpurazole (19 mg) was coupled to afford N-(bis-Boc-C-amidino)homophenyl-alanine-N<sub>ω</sub>,N<sub>ω</sub>-bis-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylargininyl 2-naphthyl ether (56 mg). Deprotection of the intermediate by Procedure E, followed by HPLC
- 30 purification afforded titled product as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.93 (m, 1H), 2.13 (m, 1H), 2.78 (m, 2H), 2.92 (2s, 3H, rotamers), 3.29 (m, 2H), 4.27 (m, 1H), 4.38 (t, J=13.0 Hz, 1H), 4.53 (m, 1H), 5.03

(m, 1H), 7.12 (m, 2H), 7.37 (m, 4H), 7.52 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 1H), and 7.81-7.96 (m, 3H).

**Example 119 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether**

**5 Trifluoroacetate**

**(A) O-*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>α</sub>-Benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinol**

A solution of N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol (560 mg), dimethylformamide (1.5 ml), and t-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (330 mg), triethylamine (290 μl) and 4-(N,N-dimethylamino)pyridine (21 mg) was stirred at 0°C, under nitrogen  
10 atmosphere, for 1 hr. Then the mixture was stirred, at 25°C, for 10 hrs and then poured into water (20 ml) and extracted with dichloromethane (2 X 20 ml). The combined organic phase was washed with water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent afforded titled compound (690 mg) as a clear solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.06 (s, 6H), 0.91 (s, 9H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.45-  
15 1.73 (m, 4H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 2H), 3.62 (dd, J=10.4; 5.2 Hz, 1H), 3.68 (d, J=13.6 Hz, 1H), 3.78 (m, 2H), and 7.30 (m, 5H).

**(B) O-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinol**

Reduction of O-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>α</sub>-benzyl-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol (A)  
20 (690 mg) afforded titled compound (485mg) which was used in the subsequent reaction: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.09 (s, 6H), 0.92 (s, 9H), 1.39-1.68 (m, 13H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 2.48 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 2H), 3.46 (dd, J=10.0; 6.4 Hz, 1H), and 3.62 (dd, J=9.6; 4.0 Hz, 1H).

**25 (C) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-O-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-**

Methylornithinol Using Procedure D, coupling of O-*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>δ</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylorni-thinol (B) (485 mg) and Boc-homophenylalanine (590 mg) afforded titled compound (767 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.01 (s, 6H), 0.84 (s, 9H), 1.39-1.55 (broad s, 22H), 1.84 (m, 1H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 2.69  
30 (m, 2H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.58 (d, J=5.7 Hz, 2H), 4.58 (m, 2H), 7.20 (m, 3H), and 7.26 (m, 2H).

(D) Boc-Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinol

A mixture of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (2.8 ml of 1M sol. in tetrahydrofuran), Boc-homophenylalanyl-O-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol (C) (576 mg), and dry tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) was stirred at 0°C for 1 hr. The reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate and worked up, including purification by flash chromatography (5% methanol / dichloromethane) to yield desired product (402 mg) as a thick oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44 (broad s, 22H), 1.86 (m, 1H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 2.79 (m, 4H) 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.43-3.69 (m, 2H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 4.63 (m, 1H), and 7.19-7.32 (m, 5H).

10

(E) Homophenylalanyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Benzothiazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate

This was prepared in a two step sequence. A solution of Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol (D) (392 mg) and 2-mercaptobenzothiazole (267 mg) in dry tetrahydrofuran (9 ml) was cooled to 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. Then, a solution of triphenylphosphine (1.04 g), anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (1 ml), and diethyl azodicarboxylate (620 μl) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5h at 0°C, concentrated *in vacuo*, and purified by flash chromatography (30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to give Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinyl 2-benzo-thiazolyl thioether (270 mg). This intermediate was deprotected by Procedure E to afford titled product (75 mg): HPLC [20 to 40% gradient (acetonitrile / 0.1%TFA) over 60 min, retention time = 42.96 min]; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.49 (m, 2H), 1.83 (m, 2H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.79 (m, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.57 (dd, J=14.8; 11.2 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (dd, J=14.8; 4.0 Hz, 1H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 5.01 (m, 1H), 7.17 (m, 2H), 7.38 (m, 3H), 7.49 (t, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (t, J=7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.91 (d, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), and 7.94 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H).

25

**Example 120 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 3-Quinoliny Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc-N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol and 3-mercaptoquinoline.

30

**Example 121 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Ethylornithinyl 3-Quinoliny Thioether**

**Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-ethylornithinol and 3-mercaptoquinoline.

**5 Example 122 - Phenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Quinoliny Thioether****Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-phenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol and 2-mercaptoquinoline.

**10 Example 123 - Tryptophanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 4-Quinoliny Thioether****Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-tryptophanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol and 4-mercaptoquinoline .

**15 Example 124 - 4-Chlorophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Quinoliny Thioether****Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-4-chlorophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol and 2-mercaptoquinoline.

**20 Example 125 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methylornithinyl 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether****Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methylornithinol and 2-mercaptobenzimidazole.

**25 Example 126 - Homophenylalanyl- N<sub>α</sub>-Methyllysiny 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether****Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-homophenylalanyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methyllysino and 2-mercaptobenzimidazole.

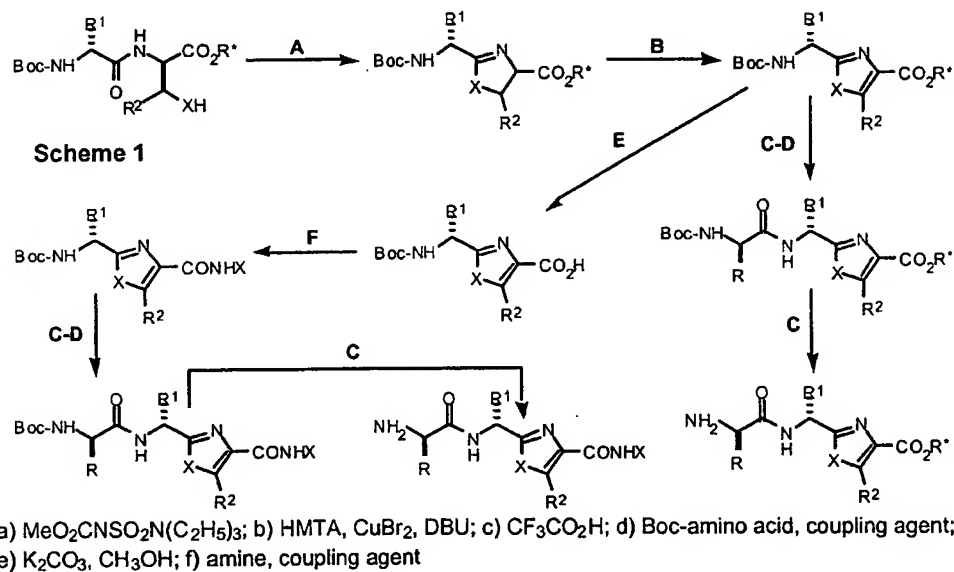
**30 Example 127 - Tyrosyl-N<sub>α</sub>-Methyllysiny 2-Benzimidazolyl Thioether Trifluoroacetate**

This was prepared, as described in Example 119, except the starting materials were Boc-tyrosyl-N<sub>8</sub>-Boc- N<sub>α</sub>-methyllysino and 2-mercaptobenzimidazole.

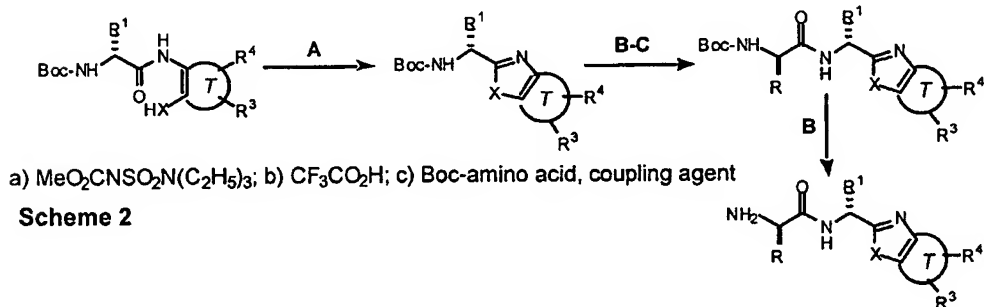
Additional examples of compounds within the present invention are provided  
5 below, including compounds listed in Table 5. Such additional compounds of the  
present invention may be readily prepared in accordance with the following synthesis  
schemes, as illustrated in the specific procedures provided. However, those skilled in  
the art will recognize that other synthetic pathways for forming the compounds of this  
invention can be utilized, and that the following is provided merely by way of example,  
10 and is not limiting to the present invention. It will be further recognized that various  
protecting and deprotecting strategies will be employed which are standard in the art  
(see, *e.g.*, "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis" by Greene and Wuts). Those  
skilled in the arts will recognize that the selection of any particular protecting group  
(*e.g.*, amine and carboxyl protecting groups) will depend on the stability of the  
15 protected moiety with regards to the subsequent reaction conditions and will understand  
the appropriate selections.

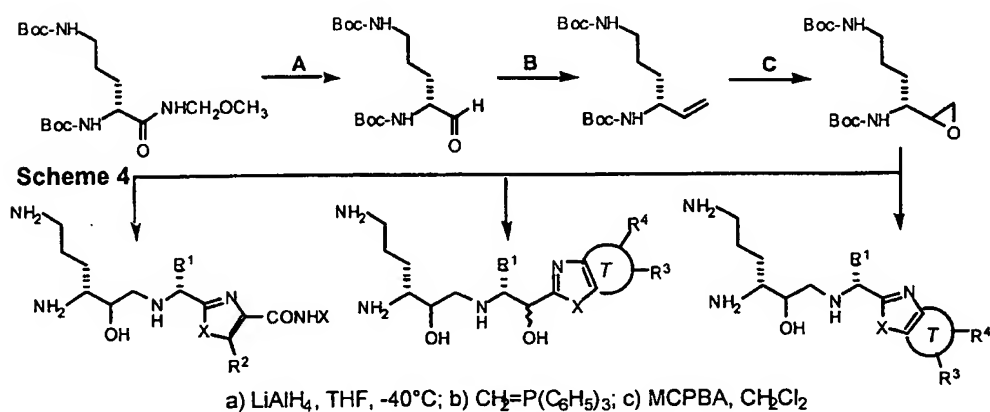
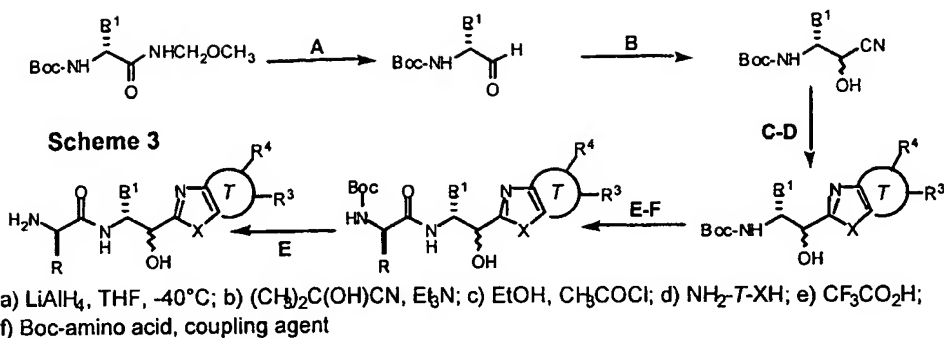


The following schemes depict the procedures set forth herein:



5





5

**Example 128 Ethyl 2-[(1R)-1-[(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate Trifluoroacetate**

**(A) N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine Ethyl Ester**

10 A cold ( $0^\circ\text{C}$ ) solution of N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine (300 mg) in dichloromethane (10 mL), under nitrogen atmosphere, was treated sequentially with triethylamine (165  $\mu\text{L}$ ) and ethyl chloroformate (102  $\mu\text{L}$ ). After stirring for 2 h at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , the crude mixed anhydride was added dropwise to a solution of L-serine ethyl ester hydrochloride (182 mg), triethylamine (300  $\mu\text{L}$ ), and dichloromethane (2 mL). The mixture is stirred at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  for 1 h and then allowed to warm to  $25^\circ\text{C}$  and stirred for 12 h. The reaction mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate, washed successively with water and brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated. The residue was purified using

15

chromatography over silica gel (50% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford the title compound (371 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.32 (t, J=9.8 Hz, 3H), 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.75 (t, J=10.4 Hz, 2H), 3.97 (m, 2H), 4.14 (m, 1H), 4.25 (q, J=9.8 Hz, 2H), 4.60 (m, 1H), and 7.18-7.29 (m, 5H).

5

(B) Ethyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate

A solution of N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine ethyl ester (241 mg), anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (5 mL) and (methoxycarbonylsulfamoyl)triethyl-ammonium hydroxide (Burgess reagent, 160 mg) is heated to reflux for 30 min. After cooling, the solution is diluted with ethyl acetate and washed successively with water and brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated. The residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford the title compound (108 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.31 (t, J=8.2 Hz, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 4H), 4.35 (dd, J=12.8; 12.5 Hz, 1H), 4.54 (m, 2H), 4.67 (dd, J=12.9; 11.2 Hz, 1H), 7.18 (m, 3H), and 7.26 (m, 2H).

10

15

(C) Ethyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

A cold solution (5 °C) of hexamethylenetetramine (HMTA) (258 mg), copper (II) bromide (256 mg) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (172 µL) and chloroform (2.5 mL) is treated dropwise (20 min) with a solution of ethyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate (108 mg) in chloroform (5 mL). After stirring at 25 °C for 24 h, the reaction mixture is concentrated to a dark residue and is partitioned into ethyl acetate/ NH<sub>4</sub>Cl:NH<sub>4</sub>OH (1:1 mixture). The aqueous layer was extracted thrice with ethyl acetate and the combined organic layer is washed successively thrice with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl:NH<sub>4</sub>OH (1:1), 10% citric acid, sat. sodium bicarbonate and brine. After drying (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentration *in vacuo*, the residue is purified by chromatography over silica gel (25% ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (48 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (t, J=6.6 Hz, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 2.17 (m, 1H), 2.29 (m, 1H), 2.68 (t, J=8.1 Hz, 2H), 4.40 (q, J=6.6 Hz, 2H), 4.96 (m, 1H), 5.24 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.18 (m, 3H), 7.25 (m, 2H), and 8.18 (s, 1H).

20

25

30

(D) Ethyl 2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate

A solution of ethyl N-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (48 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was stirred for 20 min. at 25 °C and concentrated *in vacuo*, with residual volatiles being removed by coevaporation with toluene. This intermediate is then coupled with the mixed anhydride, derived from N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (28 mg) and ethyl chloroformate, to afford the titled compound (69 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.38 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 3H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.58 (m, 2H), 1.86 (m, 2H), 2.21 (m, 1H), 2.36 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 3.09 (m, 1H), 3.29 (m, 1H), 4.39 (q, J=7.3 Hz, 2H), 4.80 (m, 1H), 5.11 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.24 (m, 1H), 7.18 (m, 3H), 7.27 (m, 2H), and 8.16 (s, 1H).

(E)

15     Ethyl 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate Trifluoroacetate

A solution of ethyl 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-N,N'-bis-Boc-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenyl-propyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate (67 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was kept at 25 °C for 1 hr, concentrated *in vacuo* and coevaporated with toluene. The residue was purified further by reverse phase chromatography (20 mL Amberchrom, 0% to 50 % CH<sub>3</sub>CN in 0.1% aqueous TFA over 45 min. at 2 ml/min. flow-rate) to give the desired compound (60 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.41 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 3H), 1.80 (m, 2H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 2.39 (m, 1H), 2.46 (m, 1H), 2.80 (m, 1H), 2.87 (m, 1H), 3.10 (t, J=7.4 Hz, 2H), 4.17 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 1H), 4.43 (q, J=7.1 Hz, 2H), 5.14 (t, J=7.0 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (m, 3H), 7.41 (m, 2H), and 8.48 (s, 1H).

**Example 129    2 - Benzyl 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate Trifluoroacetate**

30

(A)     N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine Benzyl Ester

This compound was prepared from N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine (500 mg) and L-serine benzyl ester hydrochloride (415 mg), with purification by chromatography over silica gel (40% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford title compound (290 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m,

35

2H), 3.98 (m, 2H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 5.29 (bs, 2H), 7.16-7.29 (m, 5H), and 7.36 (bs, 5H).

(B) Benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate

5 N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine benzyl ester (290 mg) was converted to the title compound (136 mg), and purified by chromatography over silica gel (50% ethyl acetate/hexane) to give a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.43 (s, 9H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 4.34 (t, J=11.2 Hz, 1H), 4.55 (m, 2H), 4.72 (dd, J=11.3; 10.1 Hz, 1H), 5.19 (d, J=12.3 Hz, 1H), 5.22 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.23 (d, J=12.3 Hz, 10 1H), 7.19 (m, 3H), 7.25 (m, 2H), and 7.37 (m, 5H).

(C) Benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

Benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate (236 mg) is dehydrogenated (*cf.*, Example 128-C) and purified by chromatography over 15 silica gel (30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford title product (50 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 2.17 (m, 1H), 2.28 (m, 1H), 2.69 (m, 2H), 4.99 (m, 1H), 5.24 (m, 1H, NH), 5.39 (s, 2H), 7.19 (m, 3H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 7.40 (m, 5H), and 8.08 (s, 1H).

20 (D) Benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

A solution of benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (20 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was stirred for 20 min. at 25 room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*, with residual volatiles being removed by coevaporation with toluene. The 2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate is then coupled with the mixed anhydride, derived from N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (10 mg) and ethyl chloroformate, to afford title product (17 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.58 (m, 2H), 30 1.77 (m, 1H), 1.81 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.71 (m, 2H), 3.06 (m, 1H), 3.29 (m, 1H), 4.22 (bs, 1H, NH), 4.78 (m, 1H), 5.10 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.25 (m, 1H), 5.38 (s, 2H), 7.19 (m, 3H), 7.23 (m, 2H), 7.39 (m, 5H), and 8.17 (s, 1H).

(E) Benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-[(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-

oxazolecarboxylate Trifluoroacetate

Trifluoroacetic acid deprotection of benzyl 2-[(1*R*)-1-[*N,N'*-bis-Boc-(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (17 mg) afforded title product (18 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.79 (m, 2H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 2.41 (m, 2H), 2.79 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 1H), 3.06 (m, 2H), 4.18 (t, *J*=7.9 Hz, 1H), 5.16 (t, *J*=9.2 Hz, 1H), 5.42 (s, 2H), 7.22 (m, 3H), 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.58 (m, 5H), and 8.43 (s, 1H).

**Example 130 Benzyl 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate Trifluoroacetate**

(A) N-Boc-D-2-naphthylalanine-L-serine Benzyl Ester.

Title compound (370 mg), obtained from *N*-Boc-D-2-naphthylalanine (500 mg) and L-serine benzyl ester hydrochloride (367 mg), is a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.41 (s, 9H), 3.21 (dd, *J*=13.0; 9.6 Hz, 1H), 3.26 (dd, *J*=13.0; 7.3 Hz, 1H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 3.81 (m, 2H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 5.06 (bd, *J*=8.4 Hz, 1H, NH), 5.18 (s, 2H), 7.24 (bd, *J*=8.4 Hz, 1H, NH), 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.68 (s, 1H), and 7.81 (m, 4H).

(B) Benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate

Dehydrative cyclization of *N*-Boc-D-2-naphthylalanine-L-serine benzyl ester (370 mg) afforded, after chromatography over silica gel (25% ethyl acetate/hexane), the title compound (210 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (s, 9H), 3.23 (m, 1H), 3.35 (m, 1H), 4.42 (t, *J*=10.0 Hz, 1H), 4.57 (t, *J*=8.8 Hz, 1H), 4.69 (t, *J*=10.0 Hz, 1H), 4.83 (m, 1H), 5.12 (d, *J*=12.5 Hz, 1H), 5.14 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.21 (d, *J*=12.5 Hz, 1H), 7.36 (m, 5H), 7.43 (m, 2H), 7.60 (s, 1H), and 7.78 (m, 4H).

(C) Benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

Dehydrogenation of benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate (197 mg) afforded, after chromatography over silica gel (20% ethyl acetate/hexane), the title compound (55 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400

MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 3.40 (m, 2H), 5.28 (m, 1H), 5.39 (s, 2H), 7.40 (m, 8H), 7.56 (s, 1H), 7.78 (m, 3H), and 8.12 (s, 1H).

5 (D) Benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

A solution of benzyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (54 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was kept at room temperature for 30 min and concentrated *in vacuo*, with residual volatiles removed by coevaporation  
10 with toluene. The crude *benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate* was then coupled with *N,N'*-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (29 mg) in dichloromethane (3 mL) in the presence of bromo-tris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBrop, 80 mg) and triethylamine (100 µL) at 0 °C for 1 h. After stirring at 25 °C for 10 hrs, the reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate, washed  
15 successively with water, 1 N HCl, saturated aqueous bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and the residue is purified by chromatography over silica gel (30% ethyl acetate/hexane) affording the title compound (43 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.39 (s, 18H), 1.42 (m, 3H), 1.73 (m, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 3.16 (m, 1H), 3.40 (dd, J=13.0; 10.1 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (dd,  
20 J=13.0; 9.3 Hz, 1H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.59 (bs, 1H, NH), 4.99 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.37 (s, 2H), 5.60 (m, 1H), 7.39 (m, 7H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.78 (m, 4H), and 8.12 (s, 1H).

25 (E) Benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-[(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazole-carboxylate Trifluoroacetate

Trifluoroacetic acid-mediated deprotection of benzyl 2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-naphthyl)propyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (43 mg) afforded the title compound (40 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.51 (m, 2H), 1.74 (m, 2H), 2.74 (m, 2H), 3.49 (m, 2H), 3.92 (t, J=6.2 Hz, 1H), 5.32 (s,  
30 2H), 5.44 (t, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (m, 6H), 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.82 (m, 3H), and 8.41 (s, 1H).

**Example 131** 2-[(1R)-1-[(2R)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

(A) N<sup>1</sup>-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide.

N-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]oxazole-4-carboxylic acid (140 mg) and 2-naphthylamine (58 mg) were coupled (EDAC-mediated) to afford the title compound (55 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 2.21 (m, 1H), 2.36 (m, 1H), 2.74 (m, 2H), 5.02 (m, 1H), 5.18 (m, 1H, NH), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.42 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.82 (m, 3H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.39 (s, 1H), and 8.80 (s, 1H, NH).

(B) 2-[(1*R*)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide

A solution of N<sup>1</sup>-Boc-2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazole-carboxamide (53 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was kept at room temperature for 20 min. and concentrated *in vacuo*, with residual volatiles being removed by coevaporation with toluene. The crude 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenyl-propyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazole-carboxamide is then reacted with the mixed anhydride, obtained from N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (28 mg) and ethyl chloroformate, to afford the title compound (54 mg) as a white solid.

(C) 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarb-oxamide Trifluoroacetate

The title compound (56 mg) was obtained from 2-[(1*R*)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2*R*)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide (54 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.94 (m, 2H), 2.31 (m, 2H), 2.69 (m, 1H), 2.80 (m, 1H), 2.96 (t, J=7.7 Hz, 2H), 4.03 (t, J=6.6 Hz, 1H), 5.04 (t, J=6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (m, 5H), 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.83 (m, 3H), 8.03 (s, 1H), and 8.27 (s, 1H).

**Example 132** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate



(A) N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine Methyl Ester

N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine (1.0 g) was coupled with L-serine methyl ester hydrochloride (600 mg) with EDAC (892 mg) and triethylamine (650  $\mu$ L) in methylene chloride (15 mL). After stirring for 10 h., the reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate, washed successively with water, 1 N hydrochloric acid, sat aqueous bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (1.3 g) as a white solid:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (s, 9H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 2.20 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 2H), 2.84 (m, 1H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 3.95 (m, 2H), 4.17 (m, 1H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 5.14 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.06 (bd, 1H, NH), 7.19 (m, 3H), and 7.28 (m, 2H).

(B) Methyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate

This compound is prepared from N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine-L-serine methyl ester by dehydrative cyclization:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.42 (s, 9H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 2.19 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 4.34 (t,  $J=9.5$  Hz, 1H), 4.56 (m, 2H), 4.67 (dd,  $J=11.4; 9.5$  Hz, 1H), 5.21 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.18 (m, 3H), and 7.26 (m, 2H).

(C) Methyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate

This compound is prepared by dehydrogenation of methyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolidenecarboxylate:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.43 (s, 9H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.27 (m, 1H), 2.66 (t,  $J=9.9$  Hz, 2H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 5.25 (m, 1H, NH), 7.18 (m, 3H), 7.25 (m, 2H), and 8.18 (s, 1H).

(D) N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylic Acid

A solution of methyl N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylate (388 mg) and potassium carbonate (1.5 g) in 90% methanol/water (10 mL) is brought to gentle reflux for 40 min. The reaction mixture is cooled, water is added and extracted thrice with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer is acidified to pH 3 and extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer is washed twice with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated. The crude title product (372 mg) was >95% pure by NMR:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.41 (s, 9H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.22 (m, 1H), 2.69 (m, 2H), 5.01 (m, 1H), 5.88 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.16 (m, 3H), 7.23 (m, 2H), and 8.01 (s, 1H).

(E) N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-Amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide

N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-4-oxazolecarboxylic acid (161 mg)  
5 was coupled to 3-amino-quinoline mediated with EDAC to afford the title compound  
(50 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (s, 9H), 2.20 (m, 1H),  
2.36 (m, 1H), 2.77 (m, 2H), 5.01 (m, 1H), 5.18 (m, 1H, NH), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.31 (m,  
2H), 7.58 (t, J= 9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (t, J= 9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.84 (d, J= 9.7 Hz, 1H), 8.08 (d,  
J= 9.7 Hz, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H), 8.87 (s, 1H), 8.92 (s, 1H), and 8.95 (s, 1H, NH).

10

(F) 2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide

A solution of N-Boc-2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-  
15 oxazole-carboxamide (46 mg) and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was kept at ambient  
temperature for 20 min. and concentrated *in vacuo*, with residual volatiles removed by  
coevaporation with toluene. The crude 2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-  
quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarbox-amide is then coupled with the mixed anhydride, derived  
from N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (25 mg) and ethyl chloroformate, to afford the title  
20 product (66 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.42 (bs, 18H), 1.62  
(m, 3H), 1.94 (m, 1H), 2.14 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.78 (m, 2H), 3.16 (m, 2H), 4.41 (m,  
1H, NH), 4.96 (m, 1H), 5.23 (m, 1H, NH), 7.19 (m, 3H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 7.58 (t, J=9.7  
Hz, 1H), 7.65 (t, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (d, J=9.6 Hz, 1H), 8.09 (d, J=9.5 Hz, 1H), 8.96 (s,  
1H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.99 (s, 1H), and 9.04 (s, 1H, NH).

25

(G) 2-[(1R)-1-[(2R)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazole-carboxamide Trifluoroacetate

2-[(1R)-1-[N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-  
30 quinolyl)-4-oxazole-carboxamide (66 mg) was deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid to  
afford the title compound (68 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.83  
(m, 2H), 2.06 (m, 2H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 2.57 (m, 1H), 2.83 (m, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 3.11 (t,  
J=8.3 Hz, 2H), 4.19 (t, J=6.0 Hz, 1H), 5.22 (t, J=7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (m, 3H), 7.42 (m,  
2H), 7.96 (t, J=9.0 Hz, 1H), 8.09 (t, J=9.0 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (m, 2H), 8.60 (s, 1H), 9.11 (s,  
35 1H), and 9.48 (s, 1H).

**Example 133** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,6-Diaminohexanamido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

5 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 134** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,3-Diaminopropionamido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

10 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminopropionic acid.

**Example 135** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-(2-thienyl)-propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

15 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(2-thienyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 136** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-(3-furyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

20 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(3-furyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 137** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

25 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 138** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2-Amino-5-(guanidino)valeramido]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-D-arginine.

5 **Example 139** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2-Amino-5-(guanidino)valeramido]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(6-ethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(6-ethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarbox-amide and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-D-arginine.

10

**Example 140** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-(4-fluoro-phenyl)propyl]-N-(6-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(6-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-

15 4-oxazole-carboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 141** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,4-Diaminobutyramido]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-propyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

20 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(2-naphthyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminobutyric acid.

**Example 142** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,4-Diaminobutyramido]-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-propyl]-N-(7-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

25 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(2,4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(7-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazole-carboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminobutyric acid.

30 **Example 143** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(4-methoxy-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(4-methoxy-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 144** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(4-methoxy-2-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(4-methoxy-2-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 145** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,6-Diaminohexanoamido]-3-(3,5-difluoro-2-thienyl)-propyl]-N-(6,7-dimethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide

**Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(3,5-difluoro-2-thienyl)propyl]-N-(6,7-dimethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 146** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-methylpropyl]-N-3-quinolyl-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-methylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 147** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-methylpropyl]-N-(5-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-methylpropyl]-N-(5-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 148** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-methylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-imidazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-methylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-imidazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 149** 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-

**quinolyl)-4-imidazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-imidazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

5

**Example 150 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,5-Diaminovaleramido]-3-methylpropyl]-N-(5-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-thiazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-methylpropyl]-N-(5-*tert*-butyl-3-quinolyl)-4-thiazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

10

**Example 151 2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*R*)-2,4-Diaminobutyramido]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(5-ethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-thiazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were 2-[(1*R*)-1-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]-N-(5-ethyl-3-quinolyl)-4-thiazolecarboxamide and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminobutyric acid.

15

**Example 152 (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-(2-benzothiazolyl)-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1*R*)-1-(2-benzothiazolyl)-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

20

**Example 153 (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-(5-benzyl-2-benzothiazolyl)-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

25

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1*R*)-1-(5-benzyl-2-benzothiazolyl)-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

**Example 154 (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

30

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1*R*)-1-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-3-methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-

Boc-D-ornithine

**Example 155 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-(5,6-dichloro-2-benzimidazolyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

- 5 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1R)-1-(5,6-dichloro-2-benzimidazolyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

**Example 156 (2R)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-(5-benzyl-6-chloro-2-benzimidazolyl)-3-phenylpropyl]hexanoamide Trifluoroacetate**

- 10 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1R)-1-(5-benzyl-6-chlorobenzimidazolyl)-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 157 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-(6-chloro-4,5-diethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)-2-(2-thienyl)ethyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

- 15 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 132, except the starting materials were (1R)-1-(6-chloro-4,5-diethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)-2-(2-thienyl)ethylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

20

**Example 158 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

**(A) N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine Methoxymethylamide**

- 25 A mixture of Boc-D-homophenylalanine (3.0 g), methoxymethylamine hydrochloride (1.15 g), PyBrop (5 g), diisopropylethylamine (5.6 mL), and dichloromethane (10 mL) was stirred at 25 °C for 10 h., and the reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate and washed successively with water, 1N HCl, sat. sodium bicarbonate and brine. The combined extracts was dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated *in vacuo*. Further purification by chromatography over silica gel (45% ethyl acetate/hexane) afforded titled compound (6.76 g) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.04 (m, 1H), 2.72 (m, 2H), 3.17 (s, 3H), 3.63 (s, 3H), 4.69 (m, 1H), 5.25 (bd, 1H, NH), 7.20 (m, 3H), and 7.28 (m, 2H).
- 30

(B) N-Boc-D-Homophenylalaninal

A cold (-40 °C) solution of lithium aluminum hydride (25.2 mL of a 1M solution) in tetrahydrofuran (165 mL), under nitrogen, is treated with a solution of N-Boc-D-homophenylalanine methoxymethylamide (6.76 g) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) at such a rate as to keep the temperature between -36 to -38 °C. After the addition, the temperature is allowed to rise to 7 °C after which the reaction mixture is cooled to -35 °C. The mixture is quenched with 2.75 M KHSO<sub>4</sub> solution and the mixture is stirred for 1 h while warming to 25 °C. The aqueous layer is separated and extracted thrice with ether. The combined organics are washed successively thrice with 10% citric acid, water, saturated bicarbonate and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated. The viscous clear residue solidifies under vacuum to give the title compound (5.32 g): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.22 (m, 1H), 2.71 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 2H), 4.24 (m, 1H), 5.18 (bd, 1H, NH), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.27 (m, 2H), and 9.54 (s, 1H).

(C) N-Boc-(2RS, 3R)-3-Amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile

A solution of N-Boc-D-homophenylalaninal (2.62 g), acetone cyanohydrin (2.5 g), triethylamine (834 µL), and methylene chloride (25 mL) is stirred for 4 h at 24 °C under nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue is dissolved in ether, washed five times with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified by chromatography over silica gel (25% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford the title compound (2.0 g) as a clear oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 1:1 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.93 (m, 2.5H), 2.70 (m, 1H), 2.19 m, 0.5H), 2.79 (m, 1H), 3.68 (m, 0.5H), 3.89 (m, 0.5H), 4.50 (m, 0.5H), 4.58 (m, 0.5H), 4.68 (m, 0.5H), 4.92 (bd, 0.5H, NH), 5.11 (bd, 0.5H, NH), 7.21 (m, 3H), and 7.32 (m, 2H).

(D) (1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-Benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

A cold (0 °C) solution of acetyl chloride (2.44 mL) and chloroform (2.5 mL) is treated dropwise with anhydrous ethanol (2.3 mL) over 15 min., under nitrogen atmosphere. Then a solution of N-Boc-(2RS, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (331 mg) in chloroform (5.8 mL) is added at 0 °C and the mixture is stirred for 1 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo*, while maintaining the temperature below 20 °C, resulting in a white solid. A solution of the crude imide, -aminophenol



(137 mg), and anhydrous ethanol (5.8 mL) was heated to reflux for 6 h and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 1N NaOH, and the organic layer washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified further by chromatography over silica gel (5% methanol/ dichloromethane) to give the desired product (62 mg) as a clear oil: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 283.0 (M + 1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.62 (m, 0.6H), 1.81 (m, 1H), 1.99 (m, 1H), 2.16 (m, 0.4H), 2.79 (m, 2H), 3.26 (m, 0.4H), 3.42 (m, 0.6H), 4.78 (d, J=2.0 Hz, 0.6H), 4.92 (d, J=1.7 Hz, 0.4H), 7.15-7.34 (m, 7H), 7.55 (m, 1H), and 7.72 (m, 1H).

10

(E) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide

(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (62 mg) is coupled with N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (51 mg) to afford the title compound (110 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.39-1.42 (2s, 18H), 1.58 (m, 3H), 1.86 (m, 2H), 2.09 (m, 1H), 2.67-2.78 (m, 1.6H), 2.92 (m, 0.4H), 2.96-3.22 (m, 2H), 4.07 (m, 0.4H), 4.18 (m, 0.6H), 4.59 (m, 1.4H), 4.78 (m, 0.6H), 5.04 (s, 1H), 5.14 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 5.26 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 7.09-7.37 (m, 7H), 7.50 (m, 1H), and 7.71 (m, 1H).

20

(F) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

Deprotection of N,N'-bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide (110 mg), with trifluoroacetic acid, afforded the title compound (65 mg) as a white powder: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 397.2 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.55-1.86 (m, 4H), 1.94-2.27 (m, 2H), 2.83 (m, 3.4H), 3.09 (m, 0.6H), 3.97 (m, 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 5.05 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 0.4H), 5.26 (s, 0.6H), 7.39 (m, 5H), 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.75 (m, 1H), and 7.81 (m, 1H).

30

**Example 159** (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

(A) N-Cbz-D-homophenylalanine Methoxymethylamide

5        Cbz-D-homophenylalanine (1.96 g) was transformed to the title compound (1.3 g) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.92 (m, 1H), 2.06 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.77 (m, 1H), 3.18 (s, 3H), 3.62 (s, 3H), 4.78 (m, 1H), 5.11 (d, J=11.7 Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, J=11.7 Hz, 1H), 5.68 (bd, 1H, NH), and 7.15-7.43 (m, 10H).

10    (B) N-Cbz-D-homophenylalaninal

      Selective reduction of N-Cbz-D-homophenylalanine methoxymethylamide (1.32 g) with lithium aluminum hydride in tetrahydrofuran afforded the title compound (970 mg) as white crystals: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.96 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.76 (m, 2H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 5.39 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.17-7.41 (m, 10H), and 9.58  
15    (s, 1H).

(C) N-Cbz-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3-Amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile

      This compound (760 mg) is prepared from N-Cbz-D-homophenylalaninal (970 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.96 (m, 1.4H), 2.17  
20    (m, 0.6H), 2.66 (m, 1H), 2.78 (m, 1H), 3.79 (m, 0.6H), 3.96 (m, 0.4H), 4.37 (m, 0.6H), 4.52 (m, 0.4H), 4.58 (m, 0.6H), 4.64 (m, 0.4H), 5.09-5.23 (m, 3H), and 7.18-7.43 (m, 10H).

(D) N-CBz-(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-Butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenyl-  
25    propylamine

      N-Cbz-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (346 mg), *via* the imidate salt, and 4-*tert*-butyl-2-aminophenol (194 mg) afforded the title product (360 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.79-2.11 (m, 2H), 2.65 (m, 0.6H), 2.79 (m, 1.4H), 4.17 (m, 0.6H), 4.22 (m,  
30    0.4H), 4.38 (m, 0.6H), 4.49 (m, 0.4H), 4.99-5.18 (m, 3H), 5.42 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 5.56 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 7.09-7.41 (m, 12H), and 7.72 (m, 1H).

(E) (1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-Butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-

phenylpropylamine

A mixture of N-CBz-(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (360 mg), anhydrous methanol (8 ml), and 10% palladium-on-charcoal (40 mg) was degassed, under reduced pressure, and then stirred vigorously under hydrogen atmosphere for 10 h. The mixture is filtered on a nylon pad (0.45  $\mu$ m porosity) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the title product (210 mg) as a clear oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers)  $\delta$  1.80-2.02 (m, 2H), 2.65-2.89 (m, 2H), 3.23 (m, 0.4H), 3.39 (m, 0.6H), 4.76 (d, J=1.8 Hz, 0.6H), 4.84 (d, J=2.4 Hz, 0.4H), 7.09 (m, 3H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.43 (m, 2H), and 7.76 (s, 1H).

(F) (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

A mixture of (1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenyl-propylamine (108 mg), N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine (130 mg), dichloromethane (3 mL), PyBrop (164 mg) and triethylamine (195  $\mu$ L) was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h, then at 25 °C for 10 h. The reaction mixture is poured into ethyl acetate, washed successively with water, 1 N HCl, saturated aqueous bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and the residue is purified by chromatography over silica gel (30% ethyl acetate/ hexane) afforded N,N'-bis-Boc-(2*R*)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-*tert*-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-valeramide (130 mg) which was deprotected (trifluoroacetic acid) to give the title product (107 mg) as a white powder: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O)  $\delta$  1.35 and 1.26 (2s, 9H), 1.54 (m, 2H), 1.85-2.19 (m, 2H), 2.77 (m, 4H), 4.79 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 5.02 (s, 0.2H), 5.14 (d, J=3.3 Hz, 0.8H), 7.21-7.38 (m, 5H), and 7.78 (m, 1H).

**Example 160 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

(A) N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-Dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

5                   Reaction of N-Cbz-(2RS, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (832 mg), via the imidate salt, and 3,4-dimethyl-2-aminophenol (390 mg) afforded the title compound (452 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.79 (m, 1H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 2.59-2.81 (m, 2H), 4.31 (m, 1H), 4.96-  
10   5.18 (m, 3H), 5.37 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 5.46 (bd, 0.4H, NH), and 7.09-7.41 (m, 12H).

(B) (1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-Dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

                  N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-  
15   phenylpropyl-amine (452 mg) is deprotected to afford the title product (279 mg) as a clear oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.83 (m, 1.4H), 1.98 (m, 0.6H), 2.36 and 2.34 (2s, 6H), 2.70 (m, 1H), 2.82 (m, 1H), 3.24 (m, 0.4H), 3.38 (m, 0.6H), 4.74 (d, J=3.0 Hz, 0.6H), 4.86 (d, J=3.6 Hz, 0.4H), 7.13-7.28 (m, 6H), 7.43 (s, 0.6H), and 7.44 (s, 0.4H).

(C) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxy-methyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide  
(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-

                  phenylpropylamine (157 mg) is coupled with N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine to afford the  
25   title compound (343 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.39-1.43 (bd, 19H), 1.43-1.64 (m, 4H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 6H), 2.61-3.21 (m, 4H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 4.59 (m, 1H), 5.02 (s, 1H), 5.18 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 5.28 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 7.12-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.41 (s, 0.4H), and 7.46 (s, 0.6H).

30   (D) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

                  N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide (343 mg) was deprotected

to afford the title compound (300 mg) as a white powder: mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$  425.3 (M+1);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (NMR (300 MHz,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ , 3:2 diastereomeric mixture)  $\delta$  1.64 (m, 4H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.29 (m, 1H), 2.46 (m, 6H), 2.85 (m, 4H), 3.98 (m, 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 5.02 (s, 0.4H), 5.22 (s, 0.6H), 7.32-7.49 (m, 5H), and 7.59 (m, 2H).

5

**Example 161**      **(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

10      (A)      N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-Chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

Reaction of N-Cbz-(2RS, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (324 mg), *via* the imidate salt, and 4-chloro-2-aminophenol (160 mg) afforded the title product (286 mg) as a white solid: mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$   $^{35}\text{Cl}$  473.2;  $^{37}\text{Cl}$  475.2 (M+23 (Na));  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 7:3 mixture of diastereomers)  $\delta$  1.65-1.88 (m, 2H), 2.80 (m, 2H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 4.99 (s, 0.6H), 5.03 (s, 0.4H), 5.09 (d, J=0.9 Hz, 0.6H), 5.18 (d, J=1.3 Hz, 1.2H), 5.26 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 5.39 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 7.11-7.44 (m, 12H), 7.63 (s, 0.6H), and 7.69 (s, 0.4H).

20      (B)      (1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-Chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine  
N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-Chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (286 mg), after treatment with trifluoroacetic acid, afforded the title product (59 mg) as a clear oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 7:3 mixture of diastereomers)  $\delta$  2.02 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 2H), 3.82 (m, 0.3H), 3.95 (m, 0.7H), 4.63 (d, J=9.6 Hz, 0.7H), 5.22 (d, J=8.9 Hz, 0.3H), 7.12-7.24 (m, 6H), 7.38 (m, 2H), 7.56 (m, 1H), and 7.77 (m, 1H).

30      (C)      N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide  
(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-Chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (136 mg) was coupled with N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine to afford the title compound (150 mg) as a glassy solid: mass spectrum (ES+)  $m/e$   $^{35}\text{Cl}$  653.4,  $^{37}\text{Cl}$  655.4 (M+23 (Na));  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 7:3 mixture of diastereomers)  $\delta$  1.40 (m, 18H), 1.62 (m, 4H), 1.90 (m, 2H), 2.74 (m, 2H), 3.03-3.23 (m, 2H), 4.09 (m, 0.3H), 4.19 (m, 0.7H),

4.58 (m, 0.7H), 4.69 (m, 0.3H), 5.03 (m, 0.7H), 5.20 (m, 0.3H), 7.11-7.23 (m, 6H), 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.53 (m, 1H), 7.68 (m, 0.3H), and 7.76 (m, 0.7H).

5 (D) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenyl-propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

The titled compound (131 mg) was obtained from N,N'-bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-chloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide (150 mg) as a white powder: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* <sup>35</sup>Cl 431.3, <sup>37</sup>Cl 433.3 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O, 7:3 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.63 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 2.71-3.12 (m, 4H), 3.98 (m, 0.7H), 4.09 (m, 0.3H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 5.05 (d, J= 5.4 Hz, 0.7H), 5.21 (d, J=2.6 Hz, 0.3H), 7.26-7.40 (m, 4H), 7.59 (m, 2H), 7.77 (m, 1H), and 7.82 (m, 1H).

15 **Example 162** (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

(A) N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-Benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine  
Reaction of N-Cbz-(2RS, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (820 mg), *via* the imidate salt, and 1,2-diaminobenzene dihydrochloride (508 mg) afforded the title compound (581 mg) as a white solid: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 415.2 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.81-2.05 (m, 2H), 2.50-2.73 (m, 2H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.99-5.12 (m, 3H), 5.46 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 5.74 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 7.02-7.32 (m, 13H), and 7.52 (m, 1H).

25 (B) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide

N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-Benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (581 mg) is deprotected in trifluoroacetic acid, and the residue is coupled to N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine to afford the title compound (110 mg): mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 596.3 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.46 (m, 9H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.58 (m, 4H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 2.63 (m, 2H), 2.82 (m, 2H), 3.18 (m, 1H), 4.16 (m, 1H), 4.49 (m, 1H), 5.17 (m, 1H), 5.42 (m, 1H), 7.03-7.23 (m, 8H), and 7.57 (m, 1H).

(C) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenyl-propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

Trifluoroacetic acid-mediated deprotection of N,N'-bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide (110 mg) afforded two partially separable diastereomeric products A (39 mg) and B (56 mg) both as white powders. Diastereomer A: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.22 (m, 3H), 1.52 (m, 1H), 2.09 (m, 2H), 2.36 (m, 1H), 2.54 (m, 1H), 2.77 (m, 2H), 3.83 (t, J=5.8 Hz, 2H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 5.34 (d, J=2.9 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.50 (m, 2H), and 7.72 (m, 2H). Diastereomer B: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 396.2 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O, 3:2 mixture of B and A diastereomers) δ 1.21 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 1H), 1.78 (m, 2H), 1.83-2.11 (m, 2H), 2.36 (m, 0.4H), 2.56 (m, 0.6H), 2.77 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 0.6H), 3.83 (t, J=5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.96 (t, J= 6.6 Hz, 0.6H), 4.29 (m, 0.6H), 4.52 (m, 0.4H), 5.13 (d, J=5.5 Hz, 0.6H), 5.34 (d, J=2.9 Hz, 0.4H), 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.50 (m, 2H), and 7.72 (m, 2H).

15

**Example 163** (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

(A) N-CBz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenyl-propylamine

20

Condensation of N-Cbz-(2RS, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (343 mg), *via* the imidate salt, and 2-amino-3-hydroxypyridine (129 mg) afforded the title compound (180 mg) as a white solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.82 (m, 1H), 1.99 (m, 1H), 2.60-2.86 (m, 2H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.66 (d, J=12.5 Hz, 0.6H), 4.82 (d, J=12.5 Hz, 0.6H), 5.17 (m, 1.8H), 5.78 (bd, 0.4H, NH), 6.22 (bd, 0.6H, NH), 6.69-7.37 (m, 11H), 7.74 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 0.4H), 7.79 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 0.6H), 8.47 (d, J=4.8 Hz, 0.6H), and 8.54 (d, J=4.1 Hz, 0.4H).

25

(B) (1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-Oxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

30

Deprotection of N-CBz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (180 mg) afforded the product (51 mg) as a clear oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.79-2.04 (m, 2H), 2.66-2.83

(m, 2H), 4.44 (m, 0.4H), 3.58 (m, 0.6H), 4.93 (d, J=1.6 Hz, 0.6H), 5.07 (d, J= 2.6 Hz, 0.4H), 7.09-7.31 (m, 6H), 7.80 (d, J=7.5 Hz, 1H), and 8.53 (d, J=4.1 Hz, 1H).

(C) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide

This titled compound (25 mg) is prepared from (1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxy-methyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (42 mg): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.38-1.42 (m, 18H), 2.77 (m, 2H), 1.89-1.96 (m, 2H), 2.11-2.23 (m, 2H), 2.62-2.83 (m, 2H), 2.96-3.19 (m, 2H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 4.80 (m, 1H), 5.11 (m, 1H), 7.11-7.32 (m, 6H), 7.83 (m, 1H), and 8.67 (m, 1H).

(D) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-valeramide Trifluoroacetate

N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxy-methyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide (25 mg), after deprotection with trifluoroacetic acid, afforded the title product (20 mg) as a white powder: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 398.3 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.69 (m, 4H), 1.92-2.21 (m, 2H), 2.73 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 4.4 (m, 1H), 5.03 (d, J=6.2 Hz, 0.4H), 5.21 (d, J=2.6 Hz, 0.6H), 7.25 (m, 4H), 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.82 (m, 1H), 8.13 (m, 1H), and 8.52 (m, 1H).

**Example 164** (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

(A) (1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-Benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine

Reaction of N-Cbz-(2R, 3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-5-phenylvaleronitrile (690 mg), *via* the imidate salt, and 2-aminothiophenol (280 mg) afforded N-Cbz-(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine which was deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid to afford the title product (72 mg) as a white solid. While the diastereomers are partially separable by flash chromatography, the mixture was used in the subsequent reaction. Diastereomer A: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.83 (m, 2H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 4.89 (d, J= 1.1 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (m, 5H), 7.39 (t, J=8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (t, J=10.5 Hz, 1H), 7.82 (d, J=8.7 Hz, 1H), and 7.79 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H). Diastereomer B: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.21 (m, 2H), 2.79 (m, 2H), 3.91 (m, 1H), 5.39 (d,



J=6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.18 (m, 3H), 7.23 (m, 2H), 7.39 (t, J=8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (t, J= 10.5 Hz, 1H), 7.82 (d, J=8.7 Hz, 1H), and 7.79 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H).

(B) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-

5 benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide

(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-Benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine (72 mg) was coupled to N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine to afford the title compound (11 mg) as a glassy solid: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 3:2 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.60 (m, 2H), 1.19 (m, 4H), 2.20 (m, 2H), 2.72-2.91 (m, 2H), 4.11 (m, 10 1H), 4.31 (m, 0.4H), 4.41 (m, 0.6H), 5.06 (m, 0.6H), 5.19 (d, J= 1.1 Hz, 0.4H), 7.20 (m, 3H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 7.40 (t, J= 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (t, J= 9.3 Hz, 1H), 7.87 (d, J= 8.3 Hz, 1H), and 7.98 (d, J= 9.4 Hz, 1H).

(C) (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-  
15 phenylpropyl]-valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound is prepared from N,N'-bis-Boc-(2R)-2,5-diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide : mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 413.3 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O, 7:3 mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.75 (m, 2H), 1.92 (m, 2H), 2.09 (m, 2H), 2.66 (m, 2H), 2.99 (t, J= 7.7 Hz, 2H), 3.88 (t, 20 J=6.4 Hz, 0.3H), 3.98 (t, J=6.6 Hz, 0.7H), 4.18 (m, 0.3H), 4.31 (m, 0.7H), 5.22 (d, J=4.4 Hz, 0.7H), 5.29 (d, J=2.9 Hz, 0.3H), 7.20-7.38 (m, 5H), 7.50 (t, J=8.1 Hz, 0.7H), 7.58 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 0.7H), 7.70 (t, J=8.4 Hz, 0.3H), 7.81 (t, J=7.4 Hz, 0.3 H), 7.76 (d, J=7.8 Hz, 0.3H), 7.98 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 0.7H), 8.03 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 0.7H), and 8.09 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 0.3H).

25

**Example 165** (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-1-oxazolo[4,5-*b*]-pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 163, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-1-oxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.  
30

**Example 166** (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-2-yl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 163, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1-oxazolo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-2-yl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 167** (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

**Example 168** (2*R*)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]hexanoamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine.

**Example 169** (2*R*)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)propyl]hexanoamide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(2,4-difluoro-phenyl)propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine

25

**Example 170** (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1-methyl-2-benzimidazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-(3-thienyl)propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1-methyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(3-thienyl)propyl-amine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

30

**Example 171** (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(1,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl-amine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine

5    **Example 172   (2*R*)-2,3-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(4,5-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]propionamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(4,5-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminopropionic acid.

10

**Example 173   (2*R*)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithine.

15

**Example 174   (2*R*)-2,4-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-2(4-fluorophenyl)ethyl]butyramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-2-(4-fluorophenyl)ethyl-amine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-diaminobutyric acid.

20

**Example 175   (2*R*)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]hexanoamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-D-lysine.

25

**Example 176   (2*R*)-2-Amino-5-guanidino-N-[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-arginine.

30

**Example 177 (2R)-2-Amino-5-guanidino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-benzyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

5 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-benzyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-arginine.

**Example 178 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

10 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-ornithine.

**Example 179 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-**

15 **benzimidazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-ornithine.

20 **Example 180 (2R)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(6,7-dimethyl-2-**

**benzimidazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 162, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(6,7-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-lysine.

25

**Example 181 (2R)-2,3-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]propionamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-  
30 methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-diaminopropionic acid.

**Example 182 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(6-cyclopropyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(6-cyclopropyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-ornithine.

**Example 183 (2R)-2,6-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-tert-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-methylpentyl]hexanoamide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-tert-butyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylpentylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-lysine.

**Example 184 (2R)-2-Amino-5-guanidino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 158, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-arginine.

**Example 185 (2R)-2-Amino-5-guanidino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-ethyl-2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 164, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-ethyl-2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-arginine.

**Example 186 (2R)-2-Amino-5-guanidino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-cyclopropylmethyl-2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 164, except the starting materials were [(1R)-1-[(RS)-(5-cyclopropylmethyl-2-benzthiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N',N''-tri-Boc-arginine.

**Example 187 (2R)-2,5-Diamino-N-[(1R)-1-[(RS)-[5-(2,4-difluorophenylthio)-2-benzothiazolyl]hydroxymethyl]-3-(2-thienyl)propyl]valeramide Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 164, except the starting materials were [(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-[5-(2,4-difluorophenylthio)-2-benzothiazolyl]hydroxymethyl]-3-(2-thienyl)propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-ornithine.

5    **Example 188     2-[(1*R*)-1-[(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-2-hydroxyhexyl]amino]-3-phenyl-propyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate**

(A)    N,N'-Bis-Boc-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3-Amino-2-hydroxypiperidine

A suspension of N,N'-bis-Boc-D-ornithinol (804 mg), 4Å molecular sieves (1.6  
10 g) and anhydrous dichloromethane (8 mL), under nitrogen atmosphere, is stirred for 20 min at 25 °C. N-Methylmorpholine N-oxide (NMO, 596 mg) and tetrapropylammonium perruthenate (TPAP, 25 mg) are added and the reaction mixture is stirred at 25 °C. After 4 h, additional NMO (200 mg) and TPAP (15 mg) was added and stirring continued for another hour. The reaction mixture was filtered,  
15 concentratrated *in vacuo* and purified by chromatography over silica gel (35% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford titled product (492 mg) as a white solid. The two diastereomers are separable by flash chromatography. Diastereomer A: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 339.2 (M+23 (Na)); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.56 (s, 1H), 1.59 (m, 1H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 2.24 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 3.55 (m,  
20 1H), 3.82 (m, 1H), 3.87 (m, 1H, OH), 4.77 (m, 1H, NH), and 5.58 (s, 1H). Diastereomer B: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 339.2 (M+23 (Na)); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (s, 18H), 1.61 (m, 2H), 1.72 (m, 1H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.98 (t, J=10.8 Hz, 1H), 3.63 (m, 1H), 3.78 (bd, J=11.7 Hz, 1H), 4.96 (m, 1H, NH), and 5.62 (s, 1H).

25    (B)    N,N'-Bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene

A cold (0 °C) suspension of sodium hydride (864 mg of a 35% dispersion) in dry tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) and DMSO (8 mL), under nitrogen atmosphere, was treated dropwise with hexamethyldisilazane (1.6 mL) and stirred 1 h. The above mixture is added dropwise to a solution of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (2.7  
30 g) in tetrahydrofuran (35 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring at 0 °C for 1.5 h, the mixture is cooled to -78 °C and N,N'-bis-Boc-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-amino-2-hydroxypiperidine (598 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (9.5 mL) is added dropwise. The temperature is slowly raised to 40 °C and maintained for 12 h. The reaction is quenched with methanol (4 mL) and

poured into a 10% aqueous solution of Rochelle salts (100 mL). Extraction with ethyl acetate, washing with water, drying ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), concentration and further purification by chromatography over silica gel (10 to 35% ethyl acetate/hexane) afforded the olefin (530 mg) as a colorless oil: mass spectrum (ES+) m/e 337.3 (M+23 (Na));  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.49 (m, 23H), 3.16 (m, 2H), 4.04 (m, 1H), 4.55 (bs, 1H, NH), 4.63 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.06 (d, J=12.3 Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, J=15.8 Hz, 1H), and 5.73 (m, 1H).

(C) N,N'-Bis-Boc-(3R)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide

A cold (0 °C) solution of N,N'-bis-Boc-(3R)-3,6-diaminohexene (0.95 g) in dichloromethane (30 mL), under nitrogen atmosphere, is treated with meta-chloroperbenzoic acid (2.61 g). The reaction mixture stirred at 25 °C for 12 h and diluted with ether. The organics were washed twice with 10%  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ , 3 times with saturated aqueous bicarbonate, twice with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), concentrated and purified further by chromatography over silica gel (30% ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford the desired epoxide (0.89 g) as a white solid: mass spectrum (ES+) m/e 353.1 (M+23 (Na));  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.44 (s, 18H), 1.60 (m, 4H), 2.59 (m, 1H), 2.76 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.19 (m, 2H), 3.91 (m, 1H), 5.42 (bs, 1H, NH), and 5.60 (bs, 1H, NH).

(D) 2-[(1R)-1-[[N<sup>3</sup>,N<sup>6</sup>-bis-Boc-(2RS, 3R)-3,6-diamino-2-hydroxyhexyl]amino]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide

A mixture of 2-[(1R)-1-amino-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide trifluoroacetate (112 mg), N,N'-bis-Boc-(3R)-3,6-diaminohexene epoxide (113 mg), anhydrous methanol (2.4 mL) and triethylamine (330  $\mu\text{L}$ ) was brought to reflux for 18 h. The reaction mixture is concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue is purified by chromatography over silica gel to afford the title compound (35 mg) as an oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.40 (s, 9H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.59 (m, 3H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.21 (m, 2H), 2.70 (m, 3H), 3.16 (m, 2H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 3.69 (m, 1H), 3.90 (m, 1H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 4.81 (m, 1H), 7.19 (m, 3H), 7.32 (m, 2H), 7.58 (t, J=8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.66(t, J=8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 1H), 8.09 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 1H), 8.31 (s, 1H), 8.93(s, 1H), 8.97 (bs, 1H, NH), 9.02 (s, 1H), and 9.13 (s, 1H, NH).

(E) 2-[(1R)-1-[(2RS, 3R)-3,6-Diamino-2-hydroxyhexyl]amino]-3-

phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide Trifluoroacetate

Deprotection (trifluoroacetic acid) of 2-[(1*R*)-1-[[N<sup>3</sup>,N<sup>6</sup>-bis-Boc-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-diamino-2-hydroxy-hexyl]amino]-3-phenylpropyl]-N-(3-quinolyl)-4-oxazolecarboxamide (35 mg) afforded the title compound (29 mg) as a white powder:

- 5    <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O) δ 1.83 (m, 4H), 2.64 (m, 1H), 2.78 (m, 2H), 2.78 (m, 2H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 3.25 (m, 1H), 3.40 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.81 (1H hidden under HOD peak), 7.22 (m, 3H), 7.38 (m, 2H), 8.01 (t, J=8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.18 (t, J=8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.26 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.34 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1H), 9.23 (s, 1H), and 9.61 (s, 1H).

10    **Example 189    (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate**

- (A)    N<sup>3</sup>,N<sup>6</sup>- Bis-Boc-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol

15

This compound is prepared from (1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide to afford a clear oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.41-1.44 (2bs, 18H), 1.51 (m, 2H), 1.58 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H), , 1.91 (m, 1H), 2.39 (m, 6H),

20    2.71 (m, 2H), 3.04 (m, 2H), 3.57 (m, 1H), 3.63 (m, 1H), 3.84 (m, 4H), 4.84-5.09 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.36 (m, 6H), and 7.42 (s, 1H).

- (B)    (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxy-methyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate

25

Deprotection (trifluoroacetic acid) of N<sup>3</sup>,N<sup>6</sup>- bis-Boc-(2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-diamino-1-[[[(1*R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]-amino]-2-hexanol (20 mg) afforded titled compound (20 mg) as a white powder: mass spectrum (ES+) *m/e* 441.3 (M+1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, D<sub>2</sub>O, mixture of diastereomers) δ 1.74 (m,

30    4H), 2.00-2.22 (m, 2H), 2.37 (m, 3H), 2.39 (s, 3H), 2.66 (m, 2H), 3.02 (m, 2H), 3.02 (m, 2H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 3.38 (m, 0.6H), 4.06 (m, 0.4H), 5.19 (d, J=5.0 Hz, 0.6H), 5.37 (s, 0.4H), 7.08-7.27 (m, 5H), 7.44 (2s, 2H), 7.48, 7.52, and 7.54.



**Example 190 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were *(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and *N,N'*-bis-Boc-(*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide.

**Example 191 *S*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dichloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol**

**10 Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were *(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dichloro-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and *N,N'*-bis-Boc-(*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide.

**15 Example 192 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzothiazolyl)-hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-hexanol**

**Trifluoroacetate**

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were *(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5-benzyl-2-benzothiazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and *N,N'*-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide.

**Example 193 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,5-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(1,5-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutyl]amino]-2-pentanol**

**Trifluoroacetate**

25 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were *(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(1,5-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-methylbutylamine and *N,N'*-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,5-diaminopentene oxide.

**Example 194 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,5-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropyl]amino]-2-pentanol Trifluoroacetate**

30

This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were *(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-phenylpropylamine and *N,N'*-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,5-diaminopentene oxide.

**Example 195 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-2-(3-thienyl)ethyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate**

- 5 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were (*1R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzoxazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-2-(3-thienyl)ethylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide.

**Example 196 (2*RS*, 3*R*)-3,6-Diamino-1-[[*(1R)*-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzimida-zolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl]amino]-2-hexanol Trifluoroacetate**

- 10 This compound was prepared, as described in Example 189, except the starting materials were (*1R*)-1-[(*RS*)-(5-phenoxy-2-benzimidazolyl)hydroxymethyl]-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-propylamine and N,N'-bis-Boc-(3*R*)-3,6-diaminohexene oxide.

15

All patents and publications mentioned in the specification are indicative of the levels of skill of those skilled in the art to which the invention pertains. All references cited in this disclosure are incorporated by reference to the same extent as if each reference had been incorporated by reference in its entirety

20 individually.

One skilled in the art would readily appreciate that the present invention is well adapted to carry out the objects and obtain the ends and advantages mentioned, as well as those inherent therein. The efflux inhibitor compounds, synthetic methods, antimicrobial agents, target organisms, and administration modes

25 described herein as presently representative of preferred embodiments are exemplary and are not intended as limitations on the scope of the invention. Changes therein and other uses will occur to those skilled in the art, which are encompassed within the spirit of the invention, are defined by the scope of the claims.

It will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art that varying

30 substitutions and modifications may be made to the invention disclosed herein without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention. For example, those skilled in the art will readily recognize that the present efflux inhibitor compounds can incorporate a variety of different substituent groups, and that the pharmaceutical

compositions may incorporate a variety of different antimicrobial agents. Thus, such additional embodiments are within the scope of the present invention and the following claims.

The invention illustratively described herein suitably may be  
5 practiced in the absence of any element or elements, limitation or limitations which is not specifically disclosed herein. Thus, for example, in each instance herein any of the terms “comprising”, “consisting essentially of” and “consisting of” may be replaced with either of the other two terms. The terms and expressions which have been employed are used as terms of description and not of limitation, and there is no  
10 intention that in the use of such terms and expressions of excluding any equivalents of the features shown and described or portions thereof, but it is recognized that various modifications are possible within the scope of the invention claimed. Thus, it should be understood that although the present invention has been specifically disclosed by preferred embodiments and optional features, modification and  
15 variation of the concepts herein disclosed may be resorted to by those skilled in the art, and that such modifications and variations are considered to be within the scope of this invention as defined by the appended claims.

In addition, where features or aspects of the invention are described in terms of Markush groups or other grouping of alternatives, those skilled in the art  
20 will recognize that the invention is also thereby described in terms of any individual member or subgroup of members of the Markush group or other group.

Thus, additional embodiments are within the scope of the invention and within the following claims.

CLAIMS

What we claim is:

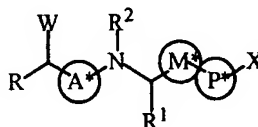
5

1. A method for treating a microbial infection in an animal, comprising administering to an animal suffering from said infection an efflux pump inhibitor in an amount sufficient to reduce efflux pump activity in a microbe involved in said infection,

10

wherein said efflux pump inhibitor has the chemical structure of structure 1, namely:

Structure 1



15

wherein

M\* is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, (n = 0, 1 or 2);

P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(OH)- (*R*- or *S*-)configuration, and SO<sub>t</sub> (t = 0, 1, or 2);

20 A\* = carbonyl (C=O), -CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1, 2, 3 or 4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>),

25 monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl

[pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,

30 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein independently R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, substituted

phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

- $R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl  $[(CH_2)_nCOOH; n = 0-5]$ ,  
 5 hydroxyalkyl  $[(CH_2)_nOH; n = 1-4]$ , aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl  $[-(CH_2)_n\text{aryl} (C_6-C_{10}); n = 1-4]$ , substituted arylalkyl  $[-(CH_2)_n\text{aryl} (C_6-C_{10}); n = 1-4]$ , substituted thienylalkyl  $[\text{thienyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ ,  
 10  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ , and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;
- 15  $R^2$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted  
 20 benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, arylalkyl  $[-(CH_2)_n\text{aryl} (C_6-C_{10}); n = 1-4]$ , substituted arylalkyl  $[-(CH_2)_n\text{aryl} (C_6-C_{10}); n = 1-4]$ , substituted thienylalkyl  $[\text{thienyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , benzofuranylalkyl  $[\text{benzofuranyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzofuranylalkyl  
 25  $[\text{benzofuranyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , benzothienylalkyl  $[\text{benzothienyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzothienylalkyl  $[\text{benzothienyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , indolylalkyl  $[\text{indolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted indolylalkyl  $[\text{indolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$  and  $R^c$  are  
 30 independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

W is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl

$[(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c; n = 1-4; R^b \text{ and/or } R^c = H, \text{ alkyl } (C_1-C_4), \text{ aryl}], \text{ amino,}$   
monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any  
combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles,  
hydroxy, alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), and alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ); and

5

X is selected from the group consisting of aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)  
pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)  
substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl,

- 10 tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny, substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny, substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, substituted arylalkyl  $[-(CH_2)_n\text{aryl } (C_6-C_{10}); n = 1-4]$ , substituted thienylalkyl
- 15  $[\text{thienyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , isoquinolinyalkyl  $[\text{isoquinoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted isoquinoliny  $[\text{isoquinoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , quinoxalinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoxaliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinoxalinyalkyl
- 20  $[\text{quinoxaliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , benzimidazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzimidazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , benzoxazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ , substituted benzoxazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(CH_2)_n; n = 1-4]$ .
- 25

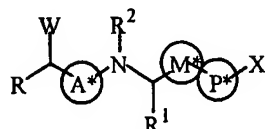
2. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering to said animal an antimicrobial agent in conjunction with said efflux pump inhibitor, wherein said efflux pump inhibitor increases the susceptibility of said microbe to said antimicrobial agent.
- 30

3. A method for prophylactic treatment of an animal, comprising

administering to an animal at risk of a microbial infection an efflux pump inhibitor, wherein said efflux pump inhibitor decreases the pathogenicity of a microbe in said animal or increases the susceptibility of said microbe to an antimicrobial agent, and wherein said efflux pump inhibitor has the chemical structure of

5 structure 1, namely:

Structure I



wherein

10 M\* is  $(CH_2)_n$ , ( $n = 0, 1$  or  $2$ );

P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl ( $C=O$ ), CONH,  $CO_2$ ,  $-CH_2-$ ,  $-CH(OH)-$  (*R*- or *S*-)configuration, and  $SO_t$  ( $t = 0, 1$ , or  $2$ );

A\* = carbonyl ( $C=O$ ),  $-CH(OH)CH_2$  (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

15 R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$  or  $5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1, 2, 3$  or  $4$ ], aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted  
20 arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein independently  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ , and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, substituted  
25 phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2-3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

$R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0-5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ),  
30 disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );

n = 1 - 4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are  
 5 independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4)-  
 10 pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>);  
 15 n = 1 - 4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], indolylalkyl  
 20 [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup> and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

25

W is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles,  
 30 hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), and alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>); and

X is selected from the group consisting of aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-



)pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)  
 substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl,  
 tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny,  
 substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny,  
 5 substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl,  
 benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl,  
 substituted arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl} (\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}); n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted thienylalkyl  
 $[\text{thienyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted  
 pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 10 substituted quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , isoquinolinyalkyl  
 $[\text{isoquinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted isoquinoliny  $[\text{isoquinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n =$   
 $1\text{-}4]$ , quinoxalinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoxaliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted quinoxalinyalkyl  
 $[\text{quinoxaliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 substituted quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , benzimidazolylalkyl  
 15  $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted benzimidazolylalkyl  
 $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}$   
 $4]$ , substituted benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 benzoxazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted benzoxazolylalkyl  
 $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ .

20

4. The method of claim 3, further comprising administering to  
 said animal an antimicrobial agent in conjunction with said efflux pump inhibitor,  
 wherein said efflux pump inhibitor increases the susceptibility of said microbe to  
 said antimicrobial agent.

25

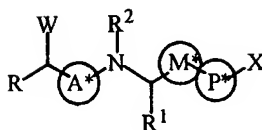
5. The method of any of claims 1, 2, 3, or 4, wherein said animal  
 is a mammal.

6. A method of enhancing the antimicrobial activity of an  
 30 antimicrobial agent against a microbe, comprising contacting said microbe with said  
 antimicrobial agent and an efflux pump inhibitor in an amount effective to inhibit an  
 efflux pump in said microbe,

wherein said efflux pump inhibitor has the chemical structure of

structure 1, namely:

Structure I



5 wherein

M\* is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, (n = 0, 1 or 2);

P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(OH)- (*R*- or *S*-)configuration, and SO<sub>t</sub> (t = 0, 1, or 2);

A\* = carbonyl (C=O), -CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

10

R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1, 2, 3 or 4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-

15 )furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,

(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein  
20 independently R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5],

25 hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],

30 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are

independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),  
 5 fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)-pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl,  
 10 arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 15 substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup> and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

W is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any  
 25 combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), and alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>); and

X is selected from the group consisting of aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)  
 30 )pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny, substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny,

substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl,  
 benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl,  
 substituted arylalkyl  $[-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{aryl (C}_6\text{-C}_{10}\text{); } n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted thienylalkyl  
 $[\text{thienyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted furylalkyl  $[\text{furyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted  
 5 pyridylalkyl  $[\text{pyridyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 substituted quinolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , isoquinolinyalkyl  
 $[\text{isoquinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted isoquinoliny  $[\text{isoquinoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n =$   
 $1\text{-}4]$ , quinoxalinyalkyl  $[\text{quinoxaliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted quinoxalinyalkyl  
 $[\text{quinoxaliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 10 substituted quinazolinyalkyl  $[\text{quinazoliny}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , benzimidazolylalkyl  
 $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted benzimidazolylalkyl  
 $[\text{benzimidazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}$   
 $4]$ , substituted benzothiazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzothiazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ ,  
 benzoxazolylalkyl  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ , substituted benzoxazolylalkyl  
 15  $[\text{benzoxazolyl}(\text{CH}_2)_n; n = 1\text{-}4]$ .

7. The method of any of claims 1,2,3,4,5, or 6, wherein said  
 microbe is a bacterium.

20 8. The method of any of claims 1,2,3,4,5, or 6, wherein said  
 microbe is a fungus.

9. The method of claim 7, wherein said bacterial infection  
 involves a bacterium selected from the group consisting of *Pseudomonas*  
 25 *aeruginosa*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *Pseudomonas acidovorans*, *Pseudomonas*  
*alcaligenes*, *Pseudomonas putida*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, *Burkholderia*  
*cepacia*, *Aeromonas hydrophilia*, *Escherichia coli*, *Citrobacter freundii*, *Salmonella*  
*typhimurium*, *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella paratyphi*, *Salmonella enteritidis*,  
*Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella sonnei*, *Enterobacter cloacae*,  
 30 *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Klebsiella oxytoca*, *Serratia*  
*marcescens*, *Francisella tularensis*, *Morganella morganii*, *Proteus mirabilis*,  
*Proteus vulgaris*, *Providencia alcalifaciens*, *Providencia rettgeri*, *Providencia*  
*stuartii*, *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus*, *Acinetobacter haemolyticus*, *Yersinia*

*enterocolitica*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*, *Yersinia intermedia*,  
*Bordetella pertussis*, *Bordetella parapertussis*, *Bordetella bronchiseptica*,  
*Haemophilus influenzae*, *Haemophilus parainfluenzae*, *Haemophilus haemolyticus*,  
*Haemophilus parahaemolyticus*, *Haemophilus ducreyi*, *Pasteurella multocida*,  
5 *Pasteurella haemolytica*, *Branhamella catarrhalis*, *Helicobacter pylori*,  
*Campylobacter fetus*, *Campylobacter jejuni*, *Campylobacter coli*, *Borrelia*  
*burgdorferi*, *Vibrio cholerae*, *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*, *Legionella pneumophila*,  
*Listeria monocytogenes*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*,  
*Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Bacteroides fragilis*, *Bacteroides distasonis*, *Bacteroides*  
10 *3452A* homology group, *Bacteroides vulgatus*, *Bacteroides ovalus*, *Bacteroides*  
*thetaiotaomicron*, *Bacteroides uniformis*, *Bacteroides eggerthii*, *Bacteroides*  
*splanchnicus*, *Clostridium difficile*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Mycobacterium*  
*avium*, *Mycobacterium intracellulare*, *Mycobacterium leprae*, *Corynebacterium*  
*diphtheriae*, *Corynebacterium ulcerans*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus*  
15 *agalactiae*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterococcus faecium*,  
*Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*,  
*Staphylococcus intermedius*, *Staphylococcus hyicus* subsp. *hyicus*, *Staphylococcus*  
*haemolyticus*, *Staphylococcus hominis*, *Staphylococcus saccharolyticus*.

20                   10.     The method of any of claims 2, 4, or 6, wherein said microbe  
is a bacterium and said antimicrobial agent is an antibacterial agent.

                  11.     The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a  
quinolone.

25                   12.     The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a  
tetracycline.

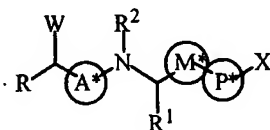
                  13.     The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a  
30      $\beta$ -lactam.

                  14.     The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a  
coumermycin.

15. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is chloramphenicol.
- 5 16. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a glycopeptide.
17. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is an aminoglycoside.
- 10 18. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a macrolide.
19. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is a rifamycin.
- 15 20. The method of claim 10, wherein said antibacterial agent is an oxazolidinone.
21. A pharmaceutical composition effective for treatment of an infection of an animal by a microbe, comprising an efflux pump inhibitor and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier,
- wherein said efflux pump inhibitor has the chemical structure of structure 1, namely:

25

Structure I



wherein

M\* is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, (n = 0, 1 or 2);

- 30 P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(OH)- (*R*- or *S*-) configuration, and SO<sub>t</sub> (t = 0, 1, or 2);

A\* = carbonyl (C=O), -CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

- R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0,1,2,3,4 or 5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1,2,3 or 4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein independently R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;
- 15 R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;
- 20 R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>);
- 25

- n = 1 - 4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],
- 5 substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup> and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or
- 10 R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

- W is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any
- 15 combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), and alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>); and

- X is selected from the group consisting of aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-
- 20 )pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny, substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny, substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl,
- 25 benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], isoquinolinyalkyl
- 30 [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinoliny [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzimidazolylalkyl



- [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl  
 [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl  
 5 [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4].

22. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21, further comprising an antimicrobial agent.

- 10 23. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21 or 22, wherein said microbe is a bacterium.

24. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 22 or 23, wherein said antimicrobial agent is an antibacterial agent.

15

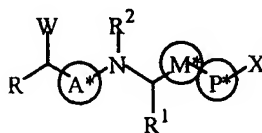
25. The method of claim 21, wherein said microbe is a fungus.

26. A method of suppressing growth of a bacterium expressing an efflux pump, comprising contacting said bacterium with an efflux pump inhibitor in  
 20 the presence of a concentration of antibacterial agent below the MIC of said bacterium,

wherein said efflux pump inhibitor has the chemical structure of structure 1, namely:

25

Structure I



wherein

M\* is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, (n = 0, 1 or 2);

P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -

- 30 CH(OH)- (R- or S-)configuration, and SO<sub>t</sub> (t = 0, 1, or 2);

A\* = carbonyl (C=O), -CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (R- or S-)configuration

R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$  or  $5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1, 2, 3$  or  $4$ ], aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ),  
 5 monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  
 10  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein independently  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ , and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

$R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ),  
 15 fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), carboxy-alkyl [ $(CH_2)_nCOOH$ ;  $n = 0-5$ ], hydroxyalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nOH$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],  
 20  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ , and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;

25

$R^2$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted  
 30 benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl

- [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzofuranylalkyl  
 [benzofuranyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], indolylalkyl  
 5 [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup> and R<sup>c</sup> are  
 independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or  
 R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

10

- W is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl  
 [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>; n = 1-4; R<sup>b</sup> and/or R<sup>c</sup> = H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), aryl], amino,  
 monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any  
 combination of alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles,  
 15 hydroxy, alkoxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), and alkylthio (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>); and

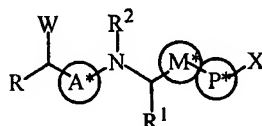
- X is selected from the group consisting of aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-  
 C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-  
 )pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-  
 20 )substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl,  
 tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny,  
 substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny,  
 substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl,  
 benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl,  
 25 substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl  
 [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted  
 pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 substituted quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], isoquinolinyalkyl  
 [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted isoquinoliny [isoquinoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n =  
 30 1-4], quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted quinoxalinyalkyl  
 [quinoxaliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4],  
 substituted quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzimidazolylalkyl  
 [benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl

[benzimidazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4].

5

27. An efflux pump inhibitor compound, wherein said compound has the chemical structure of structure 1, namely:

Structure I



10

wherein

M\* is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, (n = 0, 1 or 2);

P\* is selected from the group consisting of carbonyl (C=O), CONH, CO<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(OH)- (*R*- or *S*-)configuration, and SO<sub>t</sub> (t = 0, 1, or 2);

15 A\* = carbonyl (C=O), -CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub> (*R*- or *S*-)configuration

R is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1, 2, 3 or 4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>),

20 monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), disubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted arylalkyl [-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>); n = 1-4], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted furylalkyl [furyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>; n = 1-4], (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>NHC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>,

25 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>SC=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>C=(NR<sup>a</sup>)NR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>N=CNR<sup>b</sup>R<sup>c</sup> (n = 1-4), wherein independently R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, and R<sup>c</sup> are independently H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), phenyl, substituted phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or R<sup>a</sup>+R<sup>b</sup> or R<sup>b</sup>+R<sup>c</sup> is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2,3</sub> or -CH=CH-;

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), branched alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

30 fluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), perfluoroalkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>), carboxy-alkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOH; n = 0-5], hydroxyalkyl [(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>OH; n = 1-4], aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>), monosubstituted aryl (C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>),

- disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],
- 5  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ , and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;
- 10  $R^2$  is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), branched alkyl ( $C_3-C_6$ ), fluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), perfluoroalkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, benzofuranyl, substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, substituted benzothienyl, indolyl, substituted indolyl, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl,
- 15 arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl [thienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted benzofuranylalkyl [benzofuranyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted benzothienylalkyl [benzothienyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], indolylalkyl [indolyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted indolylalkyl [indolyl( $CH_2$ ) $_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],
- 20  $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nNHC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nSC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nC=(NR^a)NR^bR^c$ ,  $(CH_2)_nN=CNR^bR^c$  ( $n = 1-4$ ), wherein  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$  and  $R^c$  are independently H, alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), phenyl, benzyl, cyano, hydroxy, or nitro, or  $R^a+R^b$  or  $R^b+R^c$  is  $(CH_2)_{2,3}$  or  $-CH=CH-$ ;
- 25  $W$  is selected from the group consisting of (alpha-aminoacyl)amido, aminoalkyl [ $(CH_2)_nNR^bR^c$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ;  $R^b$  and/or  $R^c = H$ , alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ ), aryl], amino, monosubstituted amino, disubstituted amino [optionally substituted with any combination of alkyl ( $C_1-C_4$ )], azaheterocycles, substituted azaheterocycles, hydroxy, alkoxy ( $C_1-C_4$ ), and alkylthio ( $C_1-C_4$ ); and
- 30

- X is selected from the group consisting of aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), monosubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), disubstituted aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ ), 2-(or 3-)thienyl, 2-(or 3-)furyl, or 2-(3- or 4-)pyridyl, imidazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted imidazolyl, oxazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted oxazolyl, thiazolyl, mono- (or di-)substituted thiazolyl,
- 5 tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, quinoliny, substituted quinolyl, isoquinoliny, substituted isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, substituted quinoxaliny, quinazoliny, substituted quinazoliny, benzimidazolyl, substituted benzimidazolyl, benzothiazolyl, substituted benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, substituted benzoxazolyl, substituted arylalkyl [ $-(CH_2)_n$ aryl ( $C_6-C_{10}$ );  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted thienylalkyl
- 10 [thienyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted furylalkyl [furyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted pyridylalkyl [pyridyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted quinolinyalkyl [quinoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], isoquinolinyalkyl [isoquinoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted isoquinoliny [isoquinoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], quinoxalinyalkyl [quinoxaliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted quinoxalinyalkyl
- 15 [quinoxaliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted quinazolinyalkyl [quinazoliny $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted benzimidazolylalkyl [benzimidazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted benzothiazolylalkyl [benzothiazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ],
- 20 benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ], substituted benzoxazolylalkyl [benzoxazolyl $(CH_2)_n$ ;  $n = 1-4$ ].

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 99/01422

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**  
IPC 6 C07K5/06

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 96 33285 A (MICROCIDE) 24 October 1996 see the whole document ---	1-27
X	WO 96 40738 A (AFFIMAX) 19 December 1996 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
X	EP 0 624 377 A (BRISTOL-MYERS) 17 November 1994 see the whole disclosure, especially i. a. Scheme 2, compound 7; Scheme 4, compound 12; Scheme 6, compound 21. ---	21-25,27
X	EP 0 078 703 A (UNIVERSITY OF MIAMI) 11 May 1983 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
	-/--	

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

9 June 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

16/06/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA  
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer  
  
Masturzo, P

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 99/01422

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	GB 2 085 447 A (TORRII & CO.) 28 April 1982 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
X	EP 0 365 956 A (BAYER AG) 2 May 1990 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
X	WO 97 34923 A (ABBOTT LABORATORIES) 25 September 1997 see claims 20, COMPOUND, T ---	21-25,27
X	GB 2 272 441 A (MERCK AND CO. US) 18 May 1994 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
X	WO 96 40743 A (COR THERAPEUTICS) 19 December 1996 see page 22 - page 24 ---	21-25,27
X	EP 0 280 610 A (SERBIO) 31 August 1988 see the whole document ---	21-25,27
X	WO 97 40066 A (MIT ET AL.) 30 October 1997 see the whole document -----	21-25,27



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 99/ 01422

**Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of Item 1 of first sheet)**

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 1-5 and 6-20, 26 (these last at least partially) are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☒ Claims Nos.: 1-27  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:  
Due to the extremely vague nature of the general formula defining the efflux pump inhibitors for which protection is sought, the search has been restricted to the compounds disclosed as examples in the text.
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

**Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of Item 2 of first sheet)**

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

**Remark on Protest**

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/01422

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9633285 A	24-10-1996	AU 5713496 A CA 2217865 A EP 0823942 A	07-11-1996 24-10-1996 18-02-1998
WO 9640738 A	19-12-1996	US 5831004 A AU 700239 B AU 6269996 A CA 2222923 A EP 0832100 A	03-11-1998 24-12-1998 30-12-1996 19-12-1996 01-04-1998
EP 624377 A	17-11-1994	AU 687795 B AU 6302694 A CA 2123363 A CN 1100426 A CZ 9401187 A FI 942237 A HU 66485 A JP 7070175 A MX 9403570 A NO 941819 A NZ 260512 A	05-03-1998 17-11-1994 15-11-1994 22-03-1995 16-11-1994 15-11-1994 28-11-1994 14-03-1995 31-01-1995 15-11-1994 25-09-1996
EP 78703 A	11-05-1983	US 4448715 A CA 1257949 A	15-05-1984 25-07-1989
GB 2085447 A	28-04-1982	JP 1494440 C JP 57053446 A JP 63042635 B DE 3136508 A FR 2490222 A US 4379764 A	20-04-1989 30-03-1982 24-08-1988 16-06-1982 19-03-1982 12-04-1983
EP 365956 A	02-05-1990	US 4980343 A CA 2001494 A JP 2169591 A	25-12-1990 27-04-1990 29-06-1990
WO 9734923 A	25-09-1997	US 5710246 A EP 0889901 A	20-01-1998 13-01-1999
GB 2272441 A	18-05-1994	NONE	
WO 9640743 A	19-12-1996	AU 6590296 A CA 2224076 A EP 0846125 A	30-12-1996 19-12-1996 10-06-1998
EP 280610 A	31-08-1988	FR 2611205 A DE 3875359 A	26-08-1988 26-11-1992
WO 9740066 A	30-10-1997	AU 2741897 A CA 2251714 A EP 0912601 A	12-11-1997 30-10-1997 06-05-1999